Structured Product Labeling (SPL) Implementation Guide with Validation Procedures

Version 1 Revision 201609300612

1 Introduction 6
1.1 Organization 7
1.2 Validation Procedures 7
2 SPL Documents in General 8
2.1 SPL Header 8
2.1.1 General 8
2.1.2 XML references 8
2.1.3 Document information 9
2.1.4 Author Information 11
2.1.5 Identified Organizations 13
2.1.6 Address 13
2.1.7 Telecommunication Addresses 14
2.1.8 Contact Party 15
2.1.9 “Doing Business As” (DBA) Name 15
2.1.10 Core Document Reference 16
2.1.11 Predecessor Document 17
2.2 SPL Body 18
2.2.1 Sections and subsections 18
2.2.2 Text 21
2.2.3 Images 26
2.2.4 Highlights 28
2.2.5 Product Data Elements Section 30
3 Product Data Elements 31
3.1 Product in General 32
3.1.2 Equivalence to other Products, Product Source 35
3.1.3 Additional Identifiers for this Product 37
3.1.4 Ingredient 38
3.1.5 Packaging 41
3.1.6 Kits, Parts, Components and Accessories 44
3.1.7 Marketing Category and Application Number 49
3.1.8 Marketing status 53
3.1.9 Characteristics 55
3.1.10 Combination Product Type 57
3.1.11 Production Amount 58
3.2 Drug, Dietary Supplement and Medical Food Products 59
3.2.1 Code and Name 59
3.2.2 Product source 62
3.2.3 Active ingredient 63
3.2.4 Active moiety 64
3.2.5 Reference Ingredient for Strength 65
3.2.6 Inactive ingredient 66

3.2.7 Packaging 67
3.2.8 Parts 68
3.2.9 Marketing Category 68
3.2.10 Marketing Status and Date 70
3.2.11 DEA schedule 70
3.2.12 Solid Oral Drug Product characteristics 71
3.2.13 Color 72
3.2.14 Shape 73
3.2.15 Size 73
3.2.16 Scoring 74
3.2.17 Imprint code 74
3.2.18 Flavor 75
3.2.19 Image 75
3.2.20 Route of administration 75
3.3 Device Product 76
3.3.1 Item Code and Name 77
3.3.2 Additional Device Identifiers 77
3.3.3 Device Ingredient 79
3.3.4 Device Parts 79
3.3.5 Part of Assembly 80
3.3.6 Regulatory Identifiers 80
3.3.7 Marketing status and date 81
3.3.8 Device Characteristics 81
3.3.9 Reusability 82
3.3.10 Sterile Use 82
3.4 Cosmetic Product 83
3.4.1 Item Code and Name 83
3.4.2 Cosmetic Ingredient 83
3.4.3 Cosmetic Parts 84
3.4.4 Marketing status and date 84
3.5 Summary of Product Data Elements 85
4 Drug Labeling, Listing, and other Drug Product Submissions 85
4.1 Header 85
4.1.1 Document Type 85
4.1.2 Labeler information 86
4.1.3 Registrant information 86
4.1.4 Establishment information 87
4.1.5 Business Operation Product 89
4.2 Body 90
4.2.1 Required Sections 90
4.2.2 Reporting Period (for certain submissions) 92
5 NDC/NHRIC Labeler Code Request 94
5.1 Header 94
5.1.1 Document type 94
5.1.2 Labeler information 95
5.1.3 Labeler Detail Information 96

5.1.4 Labeler US Agent 97
5.1.5 Labeler Operation 97
5.1.6 FDA Initiated Labeler Code Inactivation 99
5.2 Body - Empty 99
6 Establishment registration 100
6.1 Header 100
6.1.1 Document type 100
6.1.2 Registrant information 101
6.1.3 Establishment Information 101
6.1.4 Establishment US agent 102
6.1.5 Import business 103
6.1.6 Establishment operation 104
6.1.7 Business Operation Qualifier 105
6.2 Body - Empty 106
7 Out of Business Notification 106
7.1 Header 107
7.1.1 Document type 107
7.2 Body - Empty 107
8 Pharmacologic Class Indexing 108
8.1 Header 108
8.1.1 Document type 108
8.1.2 Author information 108
8.2 Body 108
8.2.1 Pharmacologic Class Indexing Section 109
8.2.2 Pharmacologic Class Indexing 109
8.2.3 Pharmacologic Class Definition 110
9 Dietary Supplement Labeling 111
9.1 Header 111
9.1.1 Document Type 111
9.1.2 Labeler information 111
9.1.3 Registrant information 112
9.2 Body 112
9.2.1 Required Sections 112
10 Medical Food Labeling 113
10.1 Header 113
10.1.1 Document Type 113
10.1.2 Labeler information 113
10.1.3 Registrant information 113
10.1.4 Establishment information 114
10.2 Body 115
10.2.1 Required Sections 115
11 Medical Device Labeling 115
11.1 Header 115
11.1.1 Document Type 115
11.1.2 Labeler information 115
11.2 Body 116

11.2.1 Required Sections 116
12 Billing Unit Indexing 116
12.1 Header 117
12.1.1 Document Type 117
12.1.2 Author 117
12.2 Body 117
12.2.1 Indexing Section 117
12.2.2 NDC 118
12.2.3 Billing Unit 118
13 Generic User Fee Facility Self-Identification 119
13.1 Header 119
13.1.1 Document type 119
13.1.2 Registrant information 119
13.1.3 Facility Information 120
13.1.4 Facility operation 121
13.1.5 Business Operation Qualifier 122
13.2 Body - Empty 123
14 Substance Indexing 123
14.1 Header 123
14.1.1 Document type 123
14.1.2 Author information 123
14.2 Body 124
14.2.1 Substance Indexing Section 124
14.2.2 Substance Indexing – Substance Identification 124
14.2.3 Substance Name Detail 125
14.2.4 Substance Code Mappings – Equivalence 126
14.2.5 Structural Unit 126
14.2.6 Chemical Structure 129
14.2.7 Stereochemistry structure 132
14.2.8 Optical Activity 133
14.2.9 Irregular Amino Acids for Substitutions 133
14.2.10 Amino Acid Substitutions 136
14.2.11 Authority Citation for Organisms 138
15 Indexing - Product Concept 138
15.1 Header 138
15.1.1 Document type 138
15.1.2 Author information 139
15.1.3 Reference Labeling 139
15.2 Body 140
15.2.1 Product Concept Indexing Section 140
15.2.2 Abstract Product/Part Concept 140
15.2.3 Ingredient 141
15.2.4 Abstract Product Concept Code Specification 141
15.2.5 Abstract Kit Concept Code Specification 144
15.2.6 Application Product/Kit Concept 145
15.2.7 Marketing Category and Application Number 146

15.2.8 Application Product/Kit Concept Code Specification 146
16 Lot Distribution Report 147
16.1 SPL Header 147
16.1.1 Document type 147
16.1.2 Author information 148
16.1.3 Bulk-Lot Manufacturers 148
16.2 SPL Body 149
16.2.2 Data Elements Section 149
16.2.3 Product Data – Single Licensed Product 150
16.2.4 Dosing Specification 151
16.2.5 Fill Lot 151
16.2.6 Bulk Lot(s) 152
16.2.7 Label Lot(s) (Final Container Lot) 154
16.2.8 Container Data Elements 155
16.2.9 Containers Distributed 156
16.2.10 Containers Returned Data 157
16.2.11 Product Data – Kit with Multiple Licensed Products 157
17 Wholesale Drug Distributor/Third-Party Logistics Facility Report 159
17.1 Header 159
17.1.1 Document type 159
17.1.2 Reporter information 159
17.1.3 Facility Information 160
17.1.4 Facility operation 162
17.1.5 License 162
17.1.6 Business Operation Qualifier 164
17.1.7 Approval Disciplinary Action 165
17.2 Body - Empty 166
18 40 CFR 180 TOLERANCE 168
18.1 Header 168
18.1.1 Document type 168
18.1.2 Author Information 168
18.1.3 Docket Number 169
18.2 SPL Body 169
18.2.1 Main Sections 169
18.2.2 Sub-Section 169
18.2.3 Tolerance Specification 170
18.2.4 Tolerance Range and Commodity 172
18.2.5 Specific Sections and Sub-Sections 173
19 Indexing - Biologic or Drug Substance 174
19.1 Header 174
19.1.1 Document Type 174
19.1.2 Author 174
19.1.3 Related Document 175
19.2 Body 175
19.3 Index Data Element Section(s) in General 176
19.4 New (or only) Index Data Element Section 177

19.5 Old Index Data Element Section 177
19.5.2 Biologic/Drug Product Information 178
19.5.3 Specified Substance 179
20 Indexing - Warning Letter Alert 179
20.1 Header 179
20.1.1 Document Type 179
20.1.2 Author 180
20.1.3 Reference Labeling 180
20.2 Body 181
20.2.1 Indexing Section 181
20.2.2 Warning Letter Alert Data Element 181
20.2.3 Warning Letter Date Element 182
21 Risk Evaluation and Mitigation Strategy (REMS) 183
21.1 REMS Document 183
21.1.1 Document type 183
21.1.2 REMS Author information 183
21.1.3 REMS Related Document 184
21.2 SPL Body 184
21.2.1 REMS Sections and Subsections 184
21.2.2 REMS Product 185
21.2.3 Marketing Category and Application Number 186
21.2.4 REMS Summary 187
21.2.5 REMS Summary: Protocol 190
21.2.6 REMS Requirement in the Summary 191
21.2.7 REMS Approval 195
21.2.8 REMS Material 196
22 REMS Shared System Indexing 199
22.1 Header 199
22.1.1 Document type 199
22.1.2 Author information 199
22.1.3 REMS Document Reference 199
22.2 Body 201
22.2.1 Indexing Section 201
22.2.2 Indexing - REMS Data Element 201

1 Introduction

Structured Product Labeling (SPL) is a Health Level Seven (HL7) standard based on Clinical Document Architecture and HL7 Reference Information Model (RIM) accredited by the American National Standards Institute (ANSI) for the exchange of product information. Structured Product Labeling documents include a header and body. The header includes information about the document such as the type of product, author and versioning. The body of the document includes product information in both structured text and data element formats. The United States Food

and Drug Administration (FDA) uses SPL documents to exchange information covering a growing number of product related topics.

This document provides technical conformance criteria for SPL documents used by FDA. This combines the information previously covered in separate implementation guide and validation procedures documents.[1] A link to the latest SPL schema and controlled terminology used in SPL and other technical documents may be found on the FDA Data Standards Council web site at: http://www.fda.gov/ForIndustry/DataStandards/StructuredProductLabeling.

1.1 Organization

This document is divided into three parts. The first part of this document describes the technical conformance criteria that are applicable to header and body of the SPL document independent of the information being exchanged. The second part of the document describes product related technical conformance criteria. The third part describes the technical conformance criteria applicable to the type of information being exchanged.

1.2 Validation Procedures

Detailed validation procedures are presented at the end of most sub-sections and are clearly marked with the heading "Validation Procedures." These procedures can be used by humans as check-lists to verify if their submission is correct. The validation procedures are written specific and operational so that they may be checked by systems processing SPL documents. Each validation procedure has a unique paragraph number. These paragraph numbers are generally stable over time, but they may change between versions of the document when – rarely – a validation procedure is inserted between existing ones; normally, however, new validation procedures are appended to the end of their respective sub-sections.

[1] Instead of 2 documents that both contain details on the structure of SPL files for various purposes with examples, explanations and conformance criteria at varying degree of detailing, the combined document is a systematic compilation of all such technical information in a new topical organization. As SPL is used for an increasing number of different types of products or aspects about products, the old organization became difficult to read and to maintain consistently. The new unified implementation guide with topical organization combines the discussion of consideration and detailed technical conformance rules for each aspect or use of SPL in one place.

2 SPL Documents in General

2.1 SPL Header

2.1.1 General

Validation Procedures

2.1.1.1 XML is well formed and valid against the schema

2.1.1.2 There are no data elements and attributes in addition to those described in this document

2.1.1.3 There are no spaces in codes

2.1.1.4 Codes do not have a codeSystemName attribute

2.1.1.5 Display names are case insensitive

2.1.1.6 There are no spaces in id extensions

2.1.1.7 Letters in Globally Unique Identifiers (GUID) are lower case

2.1.1.8 There are no empty or incomplete elements except, in certain circumstances, code, title, text, and time (an id has a root, a code has a code system).

2.1.1.9 Characteristics have a class code of “OBS” or no class code at all.

2.1.1.10 There is no confidentiality code on anything but inactive ingredients, registrant, and assigned establishments outside establishment registrations.

2.1.1.11 If there is a confidentiality code, then the code is “B” and the codeSystem is “2.16.840.1.113883.5.25”

2.1.2 XML references

This information includes the location of the current stylesheet for the FDA view of the SPL and the location of the current schema. The start of the SPL file is the same for every SPL document and is as follows:

```
<?xml version="1.0" encoding="UTF-8"?>

<?xml-stylesheet
   href="http://www.accessdata.fda.gov/spl/stylesheet/spl.xsl"
   type="text/xsl"?>
```

```
<document xmlns="urn:hl7-org:v3"
   xmlns:xsi="http://www.w3.org/2001/XMLSchema-instance"
   xsi:schemaLocation="urn:hl7-org:v3
   http://www.accessdata.fda.gov/spl/schema/spl.xsd">
```

Validation Procedures

2.1.2.1 XML reference is for version 1.0 and encoding “UTF-8”.

2.1.2.2 There is an xml-stylesheet reference to http://www.accessdata.fda.gov/spl/stylesheet/spl.xsl

2.1.2.3 The schemaLocation of the urn:hl7-org:v3 namespace is provided as “http://www.accessdata.fda.gov/spl/schema/spl.xsd”

2.1.2.4 There are no processing instructions other than the xml and xml-stylesheet declarations.

2.1.2.5 There are no comments.

2.1.2.6 SPL file name is the document id followed by “.xml”

2.1.2.7 A submission contains only the SPL file whose name ends in ‘.xml’ and, if appropriate, associated image files whose names end in '.jpg' except if the document types are Wholesale Drug Distributors and Third-Party Logistics Facility Report (75030-7) or REMS document (82351-8) having associated pdf files whose names end in '.pdf'.

2.1.2.8 All image files associated with the SPL document are actually referenced from that SPL document.

2.1.3 Document information

This provides basic information for the identity of the particular document, its type, title, date and versioning as a member of a document set.

Terminology: The SPL document types are from LOINC. This code provides information about the subject matter of the document e.g., prescription animal drug.

```
<document>
  <id root="50606941-3e5d-465c-b4e0-0f5a19eb41d4"/>
  <code code="51725-0" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
        displayName="Establishment registration"/>
  <title>Establishment Registration</title>
  <effectiveTime value="20070424"/>
  <setId root="a30accef-f437-4136-808c-9ed4ada5fcf8"/>
  <versionNumber value=“1”/>
```

- The <id root> is a Globally Unique Identifier (GUID) and is unique for each version of the document. Letters used in a GUID are lower case.

- The <code> is the LOINC code which provides information on the document type.

- The <title> data element is used for the title for the document, if necessary. Images are not included in the title. Multiple lines may be used in the title with each line separated by the line break <br/> tag. (note: all titles can also be as follows: <title mediaType="text/x-hl7-title+xml">).

- The <effectiveTime> provides a date reference to the SPL version including the year, month and day as yyyymmdd.

- The <setId> is a GUID and is a unique identifier for the document that remains constant through all versions/revisions of the document.

- The <versionNumber> is an integer greater than zero that provides a sequence to the versions of the document.

Validation Procedures

2.1.3.1 There is a document id

2.1.3.2 id root is a Globally Unique Identifier (GUID).

2.1.3.3 id does not have an extension.

2.1.3.4 id does not match any other id in the document.

2.1.3.5 id (document id) is unique across all documents, sections and any other ids

2.1.3.6 There is a code

2.1.3.7 Code system is 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1

2.1.3.8 Code comes from the *Document type* list

2.1.3.9 Display name matches the code

2.1.3.10 There are no figures in the title.

2.1.3.11 There is an effective time with at least the precision of day in the format YYYYMMDD

2.1.3.12 There is a set id

2.1.3.13 set id is a GUID

2.1.3.14 There is a version number

2.1.3.15 Value of version number is a whole number > 0

2.1.3.16 Value of version number is greater than the value of any previously submitted version for the same set id

2.1.4 Author Information

The author information is represented as follows:

```
<document>
  <author>
    <assignedEntity>
      <representedOrganization>
```

Many times the author information is used to represent details on the businesses responsible for the products. This includes the labeler and registrant and establishments involved in manufacturing:

```
<author>
  <assignedEntity>
    <representedOrganization><!-- labeler -->
      <assignedEntity>
        <assignedOrganization> <!-- registrant -->
          <assignedEntity>
            <assignedOrganization> <!-- establishment -->
              <assignedEntity>
                <assignedOrganization><!-- US agent and importers -->
```

The following is a representative coding of the common structures in the header:

```
<document>
  <author>
    <time/>
    <assignedEntity>
      <representedOrganization><!-- labeler -->
        <id extension="DUNS Number" root="1.3.6.1.4.1.519.1"/>
        <id extension="NDC Labeler Code" root=”2.16.840.1.113883.6.69”/>
        <name>business name</name>
```

```
        <contactParty>
          <addr>
            <streetAddressLine>address</streetAddressLine>
            <city>city</city>
            <state>state</state>
            <postalCode>postal code</postalCode>
            <country code="country code"
                     codeSystem="1.0.3166.1.2.3">country name</country>
          </addr>
          <telecom value="tel:telephone number"/>
          <telecom value="mailto:email address"/>
          <contactPerson>
            <name>contact person name for labeler</name>
          </contactPerson>
        </contactParty>

        <assignedEntity>
          <assignedOrganization><!-- registrant -->
            <id extension="DUNS number" root="1.3.6.1.4.1.519.1"/>
            <name>business name</name>

            <contactParty><!-- same structure as above --></contactParty>

            <assignedEntity>
              <assignedOrganization><!-- establishment -->
                <id extension="DUNS number" root="1.3.6.1.4.1.519.1"/>
                <id extension="FDA establishment identifier"
                    root="2.16.840.1.113883.4.82"/>
                <name>Establishment name</name>
                <addr><!-- as above --></addr>
                <contactParty><!-- as above --></contactParty>

                <assignedEntity>
                  <assignedOrganization><!-- U.S. agent -->
                    <id extension="DUNS Number" root="1.3.6.1.4.1.519.1"/>
                    <name>business name</name>
                    <telecom value="tel: telephone number"/>
                    <telecom value="mailto: email address"/>
                  </assignedOrganization>

                  <performance>
                    <actDefinition>
                      <code code="C73330"
                            codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
                            displayName="display name"/>
                    </actDefinition>
                  </performance>
                </assignedEntity>
              </assignedOrganization>

              <performance>
                <actDefinition>
                  <code code="establishment business operation code"
                        codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
                        displayName="display name"/>
                </actDefinition>
              </performance>
            </assignedEntity>
          </assignedOrganization>
        </assignedEntity>
      </representedOrganization>
    </assignedEntity>
  </author>
</document>
```

2.1.5 Identified Organizations

Most organizations are identified using Dun and Bradstreet identifiers (DUNS numbers). These are identifiers with the root 1.3.6.1.4.1.519.1 and an extension.

```
<representedOrganization>
  <id extension="DUNS Number" root="1.3.6.1.4.1.519.1"/>
```

The only reason for an organization not being identified is if the organization remains anonymous but has sub-organizations (e.g., a listing file may not contain any registrant information)

```
<representedOrganization>
  <id extension="DUNS Number" root="1.3.6.1.4.1.519.1"/>
  <name>buiness name</name>
  <assignedEntity>
    <assignedOrganization>
      <!-- pass-through organization without ids or name -->
      <assignedEntity>
        <assignedOrganization>
          <id extension="DUNS Number" root="1.3.6.1.4.1.519.1"/>
          <name>buiness name</name>
```

Validation Procedures

2.1.5.1 One id is a DUNS number with the root 1.3.6.1.4.1.519.1

2.1.5.2 The id with the root 1.3.6.1.4.1.519.1 (DUNS number) has a 9-digit extension

2.1.5.3 There is a name.

2.1.6 Address

For addresses (addr) the following rules apply

```
<addr>
   <streetAddressLine>1625 29th street</streetAddressLine>
   <city>Camden</city>
   <state>NJ</state> <postalCode>08101</postalCode>
   <country code="USA" codeSystem="1.0.3166.1.2.3">USA</country>
</addr>
```

Validation Procedures

2.1.6.1 An address has street address line, city, and country

2.1.6.2 If there is a country code, then it is an ISO 3-letter country code (code system “1.0.3166.1.2.3”).

2.1.6.3 If there is no code attribute, then the country name may be the code, otherwise country is a full country name matching the code.

2.1.6.4 If the country is “USA”, then the contact party’s address has a state (2-letter abbreviation) and postal code

2.1.6.5 If the country is “USA”, then the postal code is 5 digits with optionally a dash followed by 4 numbers

2.1.6.6 If the country is **not** in the *postal code validation* list, then there is a postal code

2.1.7 Telecommunication Addresses

Some elements may have telecommunication addresses. If an element has telecommunication addresses it usually allows for a telephone number and an email address.

```
<contactParty>
  <telecom value="tel:+1-800-555-1213;ext=112"/>
  <telecom value="mailto:Bob.Jones@acme.com"/>
</contactParty>
```

Validation Procedures

2.1.7.1 There are two <telecom> elements, except if the document is a lot distribution data(66105-8) there is one telecom or generic drug facility identification (72090-4 or 71743-9) there may be a third one.

2.1.7.2 One telecom value begins with “tel:” and is a telephone number

2.1.7.3 For telephone numbers, the following general rules apply:

2.1.7.4 telephone numbers are global telephone numbers;

2.1.7.5 telephone numbers contain no letters or spaces;

2.1.7.6 telephone numbers begin with “+”;

2.1.7.7 include hyphens to separate the country code, area codes and subscriber number;

2.1.7.8 have any extensions separated by “;ext=” (see Uniform Resource Identifier (URI) for Telephone Numbers RFC 3966).

2.1.7.9 If there is a semicolon, then it is followed by ext.

2.1.7.10 One telecom value begins with “mailto:” and encodes an email address.

2.1.7.11 an email address is of the simple form <username>@<dns-name>

2.1.7.12 If there is a third telecom element, then its value begins with “fax:” and its format is the same as for a telephone number.

2.1.8 Contact Party

For most organizations, a contact party may be specified with a contact party as in the following example:

```
<contactParty>
  <addr>
    <streetAddressLine>1625 29th street</streetAddressLine>
    <city>Camden</city>
    <state>NJ</state> <postalCode>08101</postalCode>
    <country code="USA" codeSystem="1.0.3166.1.2.3">USA</country>
  </addr>
  <telecom value="tel:+1-800-555-1213;ext=112"/>
  <telecom value="mailto:Bob.Jones@acme.com"/>
  <contactPerson>
    <name>Bob Jones</name>
  </contactPerson>
</contactParty>
```

Validation Procedures

2.1.8.1 The contactParty has an addr, except if the document is a lot distribution data (66105-8) or Wholesale Drug Distributors and Third-Party Logistics Facility Report (75030-7).

2.1.8.2 The contactParty has telephone number and email addresses.

2.1.8.3 There is one contact person name.

2.1.9 “Doing Business As” (DBA) Name

```
<assignedOrganization> <!-- facility -->
  ...
  <asNamedEntity> <!-- other “doing business as” name -->
    <code code="C117113" displayName="doing business as"
          codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"/>
    <name>A.C.M.E. Logistic</name>
  </asNamedEntity>
  <contactParty .../>
```

Validation Procedures

2.1.9.1 There may be a “doing business as” (DBA) name if the document type is WDD/3PL.

2.1.9.2 There is no DBA name element, except if the document is a WDD/3PL.

2.1.10 Core Document Reference

For some SPL documents it is permitted to specify a “core document” reference. A document with a core document reference “inherits” all the sections from the referenced core document and may override certain top-level sections with its own sections. A core document reference is specified as follows:

```
<document>
  ...
  <author .../>

  <relatedDocument typeCode="APND">
    <relatedDocument>
      <setId root="20d9b74e-e3d8-4511-9df9-cec2087372fc"/>
      <versionNumber value="1"/>
    </relatedDocument>
  </relatedDocument>

  <component .../>
</document>
```

The reference contains the setId of the referenced core-document. The document and the core-document can develop independently. The core-document may be updated, but the reference remains to the latest core-document with the same setId. The version number in the reference may be provided to indicate which version of the core-document was used when at the time the referencing document was created or modified.

Validation Procedures

2.1.10.1 There is no document id

2.1.10.2 There is a set id

2.1.10.3 Set id is a GUID

2.1.10.4 Document set id is the set id of a core-document.

2.1.10.5 If there is a version number, then it is a whole number > 0.

2.1.10.6 If there is a version number, then it is less or equal than the version of the current core document with that set id.

2.1.11 Predecessor Document

Other documents may be merged into this document by providing a reference to the other predecessor documents that are replaced by this document. Do not provide a reference to the predecessor document under the same set id as the document being submitted, as this is implicitly given by the set id and incremented version number of this document. Only provide references to documents of different set ids. The reference contains only the id of the other predecessor document, the setId and the version number. All these ids must match the ids of the other documents that had previously been submitted.

```
<document>
  ...
  <author .../>

  <relatedDocument typeCode="RPLC">
    <relatedDocument>
      <id root="464239de-45c7-4d2f-a89a-45d303f428bd"/>
      <setId root="9ea75e1e-84ef-4605-89ff-dd08a4c94f40"/>
      <versionNumber value="3"/>
    </relatedDocument>
  </relatedDocument>

  <component .../>
</document>
```

Validation Procedures

2.1.11.1 There is an id (document id)

2.1.11.2 id (document id) is a GUID

2.1.11.3 There is a set id

2.1.11.4 Set id is a GUID

2.1.11.5 Set id is different from the present document's set id.

2.1.11.6 There is a version number, which is a whole number > 0.

2.1.11.7 Document id and versionNumber match the latest document previously submitted under that set id.

2.1.11.8 Document type matches the latest document type previously submitted under that set id.

2.2 SPL Body

The body of the SPL document includes structured text such as product labeling and specific data elements such as ingredients.

```
<document> <!-- SPL header material -->
  <component>
    <structuredBody> <!-- SPL bodyt material -->
      <component>
        <section>
```

2.2.1 Sections and subsections

```
<component>
   <section>
      <id root="62abedf9-6bde-4787-beb0-abd214307427"/>
      <code  code="34067-9"
             codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
             displayName="Indications and Usage"/>

      <title>Indications and Usage</title>

      <text>labeling text</text>

      <effectiveTime value="20070822"/>

      <component/>
```

Sections and subsections have id, title, and code. LOINC codes are used for sections and subsections codes.

The <title>, if necessary, of the sections and subsections and order of the sections and subsections in the SPL are used to render the labeling contents. The numbering for the sections and subsections are included in the <title> text.

In the SPL schema, the <structuredBody> element contains multiple <component>s, and each <component> contains a <section>.

Sections are used to aggregate paragraphs into logical groupings. The order in which sections appear in an SPL document is the order the sections will appear when displayed (rendered) using the standard stylesheet. Major sections defined by the appropriate labeling regulations (e.g., 21 CRF 201.56 and 57 for human prescription drugs and 201.66 for human over the counter drugs) such as Indications and Usage are assigned LOINC codes. Sections that have not been assigned a LOINC code are assigned the LOINC code for “SPL Unclassified Section”. Major sections may also be defined by parts of a container or carton label (e.g., Principal Display panel).

```
<section>
  <!-- this section’s id, codes -->
  <text>
    <!-- actual text content in “narrative block” markup -->
  </text>
```

Each section has a unique identifier (<id>), an <effectiveTime>, and a LOINC code (i.e., the <code> element). A section may or may not contain a <title>.

The human readable content of labeling is contained within the <text> element in the <section>. The <section> can be nested to form sub-sections. The schema for subsections in SPL requires that the nested <section> tag first be nested inside a <component> tag. Use nested sections to relate paragraphs. The section tag applies to all of the nested sections. By nesting sections, computer systems can use the section tags in SPL to display information useful for the care of patients. If information is not associated with the tag, it will not be displayed.

```
<section>
  <!-- this section's id, codes -->
  <text>
    <!-- actual text content in "narrative block" markup -->
  </text>

  <component>
    <section>
      <!-- subsection content -->
    </section>
  </component>

  <component>
    <section>
      <!-- subsection content -->
    </section>
  </component>

</section>
```

Using the following principles for markup of text information improves access to information in labeling:

- Capture the section heading using the <title> element rather than placing the text of the title within the <text> element. This allows computer systems to use and display this information properly.

- Capture the section heading even when the printed label does not include a heading. For example, tagging a pregnancy statement as a section in a label that does not have a heading for pregnancy is useful. Computer systems will be able to use the tag to capture the pregnancy use statement. Omitting the <title> would prevent the heading from appearing when the SPL is rendered.

- Link different parts of the labeling using the ID attribute to the <section> element. For example, <section ID="Clin_Pharm_Section"> serves as the target of a <linkHtml> element. Linking to the ID attribute of a section allows the link to 'reference' the section entirely, e.g., for retrieval of a whole section in a non-browser interface.

- For container or carton labels, when capturing text and figures outside the Drug Facts or equivalent sections, separate the text and figures for each concept using <paragraph> tags.

- The order of the placement of information is the content of the package insert, the content of the patient information and the carton and container labels with images.

Validation Procedures

2.2.1.1 Each section has zero to many subsections

2.2.1.2 Each section and subsection has an id root and no extension

2.2.1.3 id root is a GUID

2.2.1.4 id does not match any other id in the document

2.2.1.5 id does not match any other id across all sections, documents, or any id other than the id of the same section previously submitted

2.2.1.6 Each section and subsection has a code

2.2.1.7 Code system is 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1

2.2.1.8 Display name matches the code

2.2.1.9 Each section has an effective time with at least the precision of day in the format YYYYMMDD, except the *Product Data Elements* section (48780-1) of *Lot Distribution Data* (66105-8), *Human Compounded Drug Reporting* (75031-5), *Animal Compounded Drug Label* (77647-6) and *Indexing - Warning Letter Alert* (77288-9) documents, and the Indexing Data Elements section (48779-3) of *Indexing - Biologic or Drug Substance* (77648-4) and *Indexing - Warning Letter Alert* (77288-9).

2.2.1.10 There are no figures in the title for a section or subsection.

2.2.1.11 Section for Medication Guide (42231-1) and Patient Package Insert (42230-3) is not a subsection.

2.2.2 Text

```
<section>
  <text>
    <paragraph>Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipisicing elit,
sed do eiusmod tempor incididunt ut labore et dolore magna aliqua. Ut enim
ad minim veniam, quis nostrud exercitation ullamco laboris nisi ut aliquip
ex ea commodo consequat. Duis aute irure dolor in reprehenderit in
voluptate velit esse cillum dolore eu fugiat nulla pariatur. Excepteur sint
occaecat cupidatat non proident, sunt in culpa qui officia deserunt mollit
anim id est laborum.</paragraph>
    <paragraph>At vero eos et accusamus et iusto odio dignissimos ducimus
qui blanditiis praesentium voluptatum deleniti atque corrupti quos dolores
et quas molestias excepturi sint occaecati cupiditate non provident,
similique sunt in culpa qui officia deserunt mollitia animi, id est laborum
et dolorum fuga.</paragraph>
  </text>
</section>
```

The human readable text content of SPL documents is contained within the <text> element. The actual content is contained within a <paragraph>, <table>, and/or <list>. If a section consists only of nested sections, the <text> tag is not included. Elements that can be used within the <text> element to capture the human readable content of SPL include paragraphs (<paragraph>), lists (<list>), tables (<table>) and images (<renderMultimedia>). Elements permitted as children of the <text> element, used as children of the <paragraph> element or within <table> and <list> include superscripts (<sup>), subscripts (<sub>), links (<linkHtml>), line breaks (<br>), footnotes (<footnote>), footnote references (<footnoteRef>). Images may be included in the content of labeling using the <renderMultiMedia> tag. This tag may be used as a direct child of <text> for ‘block’ images or as a child of <paragraph> for inline images.

2.2.2.1 Font effects

There are certain aspects of the rendering of SPL that must be specified in the SPL source to insure that the content of labeling is formatted correctly when rendered. For example:

```
<text>
  <paragraph>The next snippet <content styleCode="bold italics">will appear
as bold italics</content> in the rendering.</paragraph>
```

Will be rendered as:

The next snippet ***will appear as bold italics*** in the rendering.

The <content styleCode=””> can also be nested, for example:

```
<text>
  <paragraph>
     <content styleCode="bold italics"> will appear as bold
italics</content>
```

Can also be represented as:

```
<text>
  <paragraph>
     <content styleCode="bold"><content styleCode="italics"> will appear as
bold italics.</content></content>
```

The values for <styleCode> for font effect are bold, italics and underline. To assist people who are visually impaired, the <styleCode=”emphasis”> is used to prompt computer screen reader programs to emphasize text such as text in a box warning. The bold, italics and underline font effects may be used together with each other and the emphasis styleCode. For example, <content styleCode=”bold”><content styleCode=”emphasis”> </content></content> will appear as bold and will be emphasized by the screen reader programs.

A special styleCode is used for recent major changes (see below).

2.2.2.2 Symbols and special characters

Special characters can be included in the text. Superscripts and subscripts are accomplished using the <sup> and <sub> tags. Because the SPL encoding is UTF-8, any Unicode character can be included as is. Unicode references may also be inserted as either &#dddd; where dddd is the Unicode value in decimal notation or &#xdddd; where dddd is the Unicode value in hexadecimal notation. The font used in the standard stylesheet is a Unicode font assuring that most Unicode characters will be rendered correctly if viewed by a browser supporting this font. The only prohibited characters in XML that can not be directly used are less-than “<” (because SPL XML tags begin with it) and ampersand “&” (because XML entity references begin with it). Use of these two symbols must be replaced by the XML entity references <. and & respectively. For example, “<paragraph>The mean for group 1 was < 13. </paragraph>” will render as “The mean for group 1 was <13.” and “D&C Yellow #10” will render as “D&C Yellow #10”.

2.2.2.3 Footnotes

The SPL schema includes a specific footnote element <footnote>. Footnotes are rendered automatically by the standard SPL stylesheet. <footnoteRef> is used to refer to another (usually earlier) footnote. For example, “<footnote ID=”testNote”>This is the footnote content</footnote>” will generate the following footnote at the appropriate end of a section. “[6] This is footnote content”

The <footnoteRef> element with the appropriate IDREF attribute, e.g., <footnoteRef IDREF=”testNote”/> will display the footnote reference in the text corresponding to the footnote with the same ID, e.g., in this example footnote 6.

Footnotes are rendered by the default stylesheet using Arabic numbers (e.g., 1,2 3,). Within tables, footnotes are rendered using footnote marks in the series: * † ‡ § ¶ # ♠ ♥ ♦ ♣, effectively separating numbered footnotes within general text and footnotes within tables. Footnotes within tables are rendered at the bottom of the table.

2.2.2.4 Lists

All lists are marked up using the <list> tag, and each item in a list is marked with an <item> tag. The ‘listType’ attribute identifies the list as ordered (numbered) or unordered (bulleted). The default numbering and bulleting are controlled by the stylesheet.

```
<text>
  <paragraph>Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet, consectetur adipisicing elit, sed
do eiusmod tempor incididunt ut labore et ...</paragraph>
  <list listType="ordered" styleCode="BigRoman">
    <item>Lorem ipsum dolor sit amet,</item>
    <item>consectetur adipisicing slit</item>
  </list>
  <paragraph>At vero eos et accusamus et iusto ...</paragraph>
</text>
```

Lists featuring a standard set of specialized markers (standard specialized lists) can be created using the styleCode attribute with the <list> element. Options available for ordered lists are:

- Arabic (List is ordered using Arabic numerals: 1, 2, 3)
- LittleRoman (List is ordered using little Roman numerals: i, ii, iii)
- BigRoman (List is ordered using big Roman numerals: I, II, III)
- LittleAlpha (List is order using little alpha characters: a, b, c)
- BigAlpha (List is ordered using big alpha characters: A, B, C)

For example: <list listType="ordered" styleCode="LittleRoman">

For unordered lists the following options exist:

- Disc (List bullets are simple solid discs: ●)
- Circle (List bullets are hollow discs: ○)

- Square (List bullets are solid squares: ■)

For example: <list listType="unordered" styleCode="Disc">

In addition to the standard specialized lists, user-defined characters are also permitted as markers by nesting <caption> within the <item> tag. Note that any character, XML entity, or Unicode symbol, may be used in the <caption>, and that the <caption> for each <item> are not restricted to the same character.

For example: <item><caption>*</caption> the asterisk is used as item marker here.<item>

2.2.2.5 Tables

Tables can be created with the full structure (header (e.g., for column names), body (e.g. for the rows of the table) and footer e.g. for table footnotes)). The element <tbody> is required for an SPL table while the elements <thead> and <tfoot> are optional in the SPL schema. The structure will display a standard typographical table with rules between the caption (table title) and head, the head and body, and the body and <tfoot>. If a <tfoot> element is included and footnotes are present in a table, then footnotes are rendered after the existing content of the <tfoot> element.

It is recommended to always start with a standard table (i.e., <thead> and <tbody> elements) and test to see whether the rendering is unambiguous and interpretable. It is important that the table communicate labeling content not that it duplicates the presentation in word processed or typeset versions of the package insert. In the unusual situation where additional formatting is needed, the rule styleCode specified or certain attributes may be used to modify the table.

The rule codes are as follows (note that the control names are case sensitive).

- Rule on left side of cell is Lrule
- Rule on right side of cell is Rrule
- Rule on top of cell is Toprule
- Rule on bottom of cell is Botrule

Note: More than one rule control may be used in a cell, e.g., <td styleCode code="Botrule Lrule">Cell content </td>.

Rule control codes should be used only when necessary for the interpretability of the table. Use of these codes may result in overriding the default rules for tables. Rather than setting the rule for each cell, table rules may also be controlled according to

entire rows or columns by use of the styleCode attributes with <col>, <colgroup>, <thead>, <tfoot>, <tbody> and <tr> elements.

To make rowgroups appear with horizontal rules, use the styleCode attribute "Botrule" with the appropriate <tr> element. The Botrule value is rarely needed on the <td> element.

The preferred method for using vertical rules is to define colgroup with styleCode="Lrule" or "Rrule" (or both). Only if this does not yield the desired vertical rule should the Lrule or Rrule code value with styleCode attributes on the <td> or <th> element itself be used. Note: In general, vertical rules should not be used. Good typography for tables means using few vertical rules.

To merge cells vertically and horizontally, the rowspan and colspan attributes should be used on the <td>element.

To determine the width of a table, the width attribute may be used on the <table> element and to determine the width of a table column, the width attribute may be used on the <col> and <colgroup> elements.

For horizontal alignment, the preferred method for aligning cell content within the margins is to use <col align=".. "/> in the <colgroup> element, though this can be used in the <colgroup> element as well. Valid values for align are "left", "center", "right", "justify" (for full justification of contents within the cells), and "char" (for character alignment within the cells). Using the <col align=".. "/> markup ensures that the contents for all cells in the column share the same alignment.

For vertical alignment, the valign attribute can be used within cells. For cases in which the cell alignment must be different from other cells in the column, align is also available as an attribute on the other table elements, including <td>.

Markup for table footnote is rendered in the <tfoot> tag. This element does not need to be included in SPL; the standard stylesheet will include a <tfoot> tag if a <footnote> element is present within either the <thead> or <tbody> sections. A <tfoot> section should be included in SPL only if there is additional information other than footnotes that needs to be rendered in this section.

For table text spacing, in some instances, the use of a "tab" or text indentation is desirable in a given table cell. In an SPL document, this effect is achieved by using the nonbreaking space ( ) as if it were a "tab" space. As the following snippet of XML shows, two nonbreaking spaces were used to offset the word "Male" from the margin: <td> Male</td>. The nonbreaking space can also be used to keep text in a table from breaking inappropriately due to browser resizing.

2.2.2.6 Hypertext links

SPL offers hypertext linking capabilities generally similar to those found in the HTML specification.

Links are specified by the <linkHtml> construct, where the value for the href attribute of <linkHtml> (the target of the link) is the ID attribute value of a <section>, <paragraph>, <table>, <list>, <content>,<renderMultimedia> element. The stylesheet does not support the styleCode attribute of the <linkHtml> element; if a styleCode is needed for a link, this should be coded via the <content> element within the link as with other text.

2.2.2.7 Recent major changes in labeling text

SPL offers a notation to identify recent major changes in the labeling text including table elements <table> and table data <td>. The recent major text is tagged using the <content styleCode="xmChange">. For example,

```
<text>This is an example of text that is not changed.<content
styleCode="xmChange">This is an example of text that is a recent major
change</content>This is an example of changed text that is not considered a
recent major change</text>
```

Validation Procedures

2.2.2.8 Text is enclosed under <paragraph>, <list>, or <table> elements.

2.2.3 Images

The SPL schema uses <observationMedia> elements to identify graphic files to be rendered at the locations where they are referenced by <renderMultiMedia> elements in the <section>. In other words, an image in an SPL will be rendered wherever it is referenced by the renderMultimedia markup, no matter where the observationMedia markup appears. The referencedObject attribute of the renderMultiMedia element identifies the corresponding observationMedia instance by means of its ID identifier such as <renderMultiMedia referencedObject="MM1"/>

```
<section>
  <text>
    <paragraph>...</paragraph>
    <renderMultiMedia referencedObject="MM1"/>
    <paragraph>...</paragraph>
  </text>
```

```
  <component>
    <observationMedia ID="MM1">
      <text>descriptive text</text>
      <value xsi:type="ED" mediaType="image/jpeg">
        <reference value="drug-01.jpg"/>
      </value>
    </observationMedia>
  </component>
</section>
```

The <observationMedia> element does not contain the graphics file, but instead points at the file. The <reference> value is the file name. The file name should not include spaces. The observationMedia identifies the graphic media type (i.e., JPEG). In addition, the observationMedia element includes the text description of the image used by screen reader software for visually impaired users. This is included in the <text> child of <observationMedia>. Note also that observationMedia is always contained within a <component> element as illustrated.

For image placement, if an image is a block image (i.e., should appear in its own space), insert the renderMultimedia tag between <paragraph> elements. If an image is inline (i.e., should appear alongside text), insert the renderMultimedia tag in the text of a <paragraph> as appropriate. Inline images are expected to be uncommon and basically represent symbols that cannot be represented by Unicode characters. In addition, <caption> are not applicable for inline images since these are not offset from the surrounding text.

The SPL stylesheet does not perform any resizing graphics or changing the resolution of graphics files. Thus, all images are rendered in the browser as-is, with all characteristics of the actual graphic file itself. To ensure that a graphic will appear as desired, it is very important that the graphic file is edited to a dimension appropriate for its presentation within the browser. If this is not done, the appearance of the graphic may not be consistent with the narrative content reducing the readability of the file. JPEG image file type using appropriate pixels per inch for images for viewing in a browser using the standard stylesheet.

Validation Procedures

2.2.3.1 There is text

2.2.3.2 Value xsi:type is as above

2.2.3.3 Media type is image/jpeg

2.2.3.4 Reference value is the file name for a valid image

2.2.3.5 Size of image file is less than 1 MB

2.2.3.6 File is a JPEG image and the name has the extension ".jpg"

2.2.3.7 Image components are referenced at least once in the text of any section.

2.2.3.8 Image reference in text has an image "observationMedia" element with a matching ID in the same document.

2.2.4 Highlights

The actual Highlights of a rendered SPL are constructed from four sources: "boilerplate" text rendered directly from the stylesheet, information from data elements inserted into the boilerplate text, <title> in the header which includes the drug names, dosage form, route of administration, controlled substance symbol and year of initial US approval, and text blocks corresponding to each major highlights part (Highlights text). Highlights section titles are derived from the FPI section LOINC codes. The Highlights text is captured for the following sections: Microbiology, Boxed Warning, Recent Major Changes, Indications and Usage, Dosage and Administration, Dosage Forms and Strengths, Contraindications, Warnings and Precautions, Adverse Reactions, Drug Interactions and Use in Specific Populations.

The text blocks for Highlights are coded with the <excerpt> <highlight> elements of the major section of labeling in which they are contained.

```
<section>
  <excerpt>
    <highlight>
      <text>...</text>
```

For example, the Highlights for Indications and Usage are located with the Indications and Usage section of the labeling. The Highlights text is placed under the main section and not under subsections. The following is an example:

```
<component>
  <section>
    <id root="47ef84cd-8314-48c3-8ee2-bdff3087f83f"/>
    <code code="43685-7" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
          displayName="warnings and precautions section"/>
    <title>5 WARNINGS AND PRECAUTIONS</title>
```

```
    <excerpt>
      <highlight>
        <text>
          <list listType="unordered">
            <item>Aplastic anemia has been observed in 8% of recipients and
is irreversible in the majority of patients who experience this. (<linkHtml
href=”#Section_5.1”>5.1</linkHtml>)</item>
            <item>Monitor for hematological adverse reactions every 2 weeks
through the second month of treatment (<linkHtml
href=”#Section_5.2”>5.2</linkHtml>)</item>
          </list>
        </text>
      </highlight>
    </excerpt>

    <component>
      <section ID="Section_5.1">
        <id root="a857689e-9563-43c0-a244-8a6d5a25966a"/>
        <title>5.1 Aplastic anemia</title>
        <text>
          <paragraph>Aplastic anemia has been observed in…..</paragraph>
        </text>
      </section>
    </component>
  </section>
</component>
```

This example illustrates the following principles:

a. The <text> block for the Highlights is included as the <excerpt> <highlight> <text> children of the respective section. In the example above, the text block rendered in the highlights section is the child of the “Warnings and Precautions” section.

b. The coding of the highlights text block is not in a subsection.

c. The text block is rendered similar to any other text block, although in a location separate from its actual position in the rendered SPL document.

d. Links to the section or subsection where the primary content exists are explicitly entered in the Highlights text block.

e. Section numbering is included in the title of sections and subsections (e.g., ‘5’ and ‘5.1’, above).

Highlights and labeling boilerplate items include:

- Statement -“Highlights of Prescribing Information”
- Highlights section titles
- Patient counseling statement with information taken from FPI section LOINC codes for patient information sections, specifically information for patient

section (34076-0), SPL Medguide section (42231-1), SPL patient package insert section (42230-3) and SPL supplemental patient material (38056-8)

- Revision date is taken from the effective time
- Full Prescribing Information: Contents
- Statement – “Full Prescribing Information”

Validation Procedures

2.2.4.1 There may be excerpts.

2.2.4.2 Excerpts occur only in sections with the following codes: 34066-1 (Boxed Warning), 43683-2 (Recent Major Changes), 34067-9 (Indications and Usage), 34068-7 (Dosage and Administration), 43678-2 (Dosage Forms and Strengths), 34070-3 (Contraindications), 43685-7 (Warnings and Precautions), 34084-4 (Adverse Reactions), 34073-7 (Drug Interactions), 43684-0 (Use in Specific Populations), 49489-8 (Microbiology)

2.2.4.3 If there is an excerpt, then it only has highlight text.

2.2.4.4 An excerpt in the adverse reactions section (34084-4) includes the statement: "to report suspected adverse reactions" and "1-800-332-1088" (different telephone number for documents of type 53404-0 – “Vaccine Label”).

2.2.4.5 If there are highlights excerpts, then the title for the SPL file includes the text string (without the quotation marks): “These highlights do not include all the information needed to use” “see full prescribing information for” and “Initial U.S. Approval”

2.2.5 Product Data Elements Section

Currently most of the time the product data elements are in a separate section of their own followed by the content of labeling sections that contain only text and no data elements. Product data element section and other special data elements sections are described in Section 3 below; this section describes the features used from the free text (so called “narrative”) part of the SPL documents.

```
<document>          <!-- SPL header material here -->
  <component>
    <structuredBody><!-- SPL body material here -->

      <component>
        <section>   <!-- Product data element section -->
          <code code="48780-1" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
                displayName="SPL product data elements section"/>
```

```
          <subject>
            <manufacturedProduct>
              <!-- product data elements -->
            </manufacturedProduct>
          </subject>

        </section>
      </component>
                    <!-- Other content of labeling material -->
      <component>
        <!-- ... -->
```

The beginning of the product data elements is as follows

```
<component>
  <section>
    <id root="e13a985b-f706-a5c8-e8ef-73891eb1c697"/>
      <code code="48780-1"
            codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
            displayName="SPL product data elements section"/>
      <effectiveTime value="20070424"/>
      <subject>
        <manufacturedProduct>
```

Validation Procedures

2.2.5.1 Code, code system and display name are as above

2.2.5.2 There is one or more product, except in *Human Compounded Drug Reporting* (75031-5) and *Animal Compounded Drug Label* (77647-6) documents.

2.2.5.3 There is an effective time with at least the precision of day in the format YYYYMMDD

3 Product Data Elements

This section describes with examples in general the capabilities of the product data elements that are currently implemented in the scope of this Implementation Guide. More specific sections follow with more detail and more specific guidelines and validation procedures. These subsequent sections may constrain and detail what is described here, but may also introduce details not described here in general. In case of discrepancies, the later specific ruling preempts the general description given here.

Terminology:

- FDA terminology is used for the proprietary, non proprietary and ingredient name.
- National Drug Codes (NDC) System is used for
    - NDC Labeler Code (4 or 5 digit code (e.g., 0001 or 11111)), to register the labeler prefix,

    - NDC Product Code (8 or 9 characters beginning with the NDC Labeler Code separated by a hyphen from the product segment of the code (e.g., 0001-0001 or 11111-001 or 11111-0001)) for products independent of packaging, and
    - NDC Package Code (10 characters beginning with the NDC Product Code separated by a hyphen from the package segment of the code (e.g., 0001-0001-01, 11111-001-01 or 11111-0001-1)) for packaged products.
- NDC System is also used for identifiers for the National Health Related Item Code (NHRIC)
    - NHRIC Labeler Code (4 or 5 digit code),
    - NHRIC Product Code (8, 9 or 10 digits beginning with the NHRIC Labeler Code separated by a hyphen from the product segment of the code and
    - NHRIC Package Code (10 digits beginning with the NDC Product Code separated by a hyphen from the package segment of the code).
- ISBT-128 site and product codes are for licensed minimally manipulated cell products.
- GS1 GTIN and HIBCC codes are used for device item codes.
- FDA Substance Registration System (SRS) is used for the ingredient and active moiety Unique Ingredient Identifier (UNII).
- The FDA submission tracking system is used for application numbers.
- Codes derived from section references to the Code of Federal Regulations are used for monograph citations.
- The National Cancer Institute Thesaurus (NCIt) is used for dosage form, product characteristics, DEA schedule, unit of presentation, route of administration and equivalent codes.
- The Unified Codes for Units of Measure (UCUM) is used for the unit of measure.
- HL7 confidentiality code “B” is for business confidential information.
- FDA Product Classification codes are for device and cosmetic products.

3.1 Product in General

Among the product data elements that are always used are item code and name. These are children of <manufacturedProduct>.

Item Code is a unique identification of this product description whether or not the item code is printed on the product itself. Item codes must conform to the ISO 15459 system of codes. National Drug Code (NDC), National Health Related Item Code (NHRIC), GS1 GTIN, HIBCC all conform to ISO 15459. All these have in common that they are composed of a company prefix (e.g. NDC labeler segment) followed by the item reference that is assigned by the owner of the company prefix to create a unique item code. As long as the item code is unique, the digits (and letters) in it need not convey any other information.

Names: When specific manufactured or marketed products are described, the name is the proprietary name as it appears on the label divided between <name> and <suffix>. The <name> is the initial portion of the proprietary name describing the ingredients without any other descriptors including trademarks and dosage forms. If necessary, <suffix> is used for descriptors such as "extended release". When using the <suffix>, a space after the proprietary name is added as necessary. Non-proprietary or generic names of drugs are found in the <genericMedicine><name> element. Device type codes and descriptions use <asSpecializedKind>.

A brief description is added in the <desc> element that states succinctly the kind of device. This text should be brief to be able to list it in short summary listings. While the text can be up to 512 characters in length, it should normally be much shorter so that it will be useful for listing in tables. A device also has a device-nomenclature code in the <asSpecializedKind> element. This code comes from the FDA Product Classification terminology.

Marketing category and product type: The type of product is indicated by the "Marketing Category".

Table 1: Marketing Category and Product Type

Code	Type	Display Name
C73583	Drug	ANADA
C73584	Drug	ANDA
C73585	Drug	BLA
C73588	Drug	Conditional NADA
C73590	Drug	Export only
C73593	Drug	NADA
C73594	Drug	NDA
C73603	Drug	OTC monograph final
C73604	Drug	OTC monograph not final
C73605	Drug	NDA authorized generic
C73613	Drug	unapproved medical gas
C73614	Drug	unapproved homeopathic
C73627	Drug	unapproved drug other
C73626	Drug	bulk ingredient
C75302	Drug	IND
C80438	Device	Exempt device
C80440	Device	Humanitarian Device Exemption
C80441	Device	Premarket Application
C80442	Device	Premarket Notification
C86964	Medical Food	Medical Food
C86952	Dietary Supplement	Dietary Supplement
C86965	Cosmetic	Cosmetic

Code	Type	Display Name
C92556	Drug	Legally Marketed Unapproved New Animal Drugs for Minor Species
C94795	Drug	Drug for Further Processing
C95600	Drug	Approved drug product manufactured exclusively for private label distributor
C95601	Drug	OTC monograph drug product manufactured exclusively for private label distributor
C95602	Drug	Unapproved drug product manufactured exclusively for private label distributor
C96793	Drug	Bulk Ingredient for Human Prescription Compounding
C98252	Drug	Bulk Ingredient for Animal Drug Compounding
C101533	Drug	unapproved drug for use in drug shortage

The following is an example for a drug product:

```
<subject>
  <manufacturedProduct>
    <manufacturedProduct>
      <code code="NDC Product Code" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.69"/>
      <name>proprietary name <suffix>suffix to name</suffix></name>
      <formCode code="dose form code"
                codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
                displayName="display name"/>

      <asEntityWithGeneric>
        <genericMedicine>
          <name>non proprietary name</name>
        </genericMedicine>
      </asEntityWithGeneric>
    </manufacturedProduct>

    <subjectOf>
      <approval>
        <!-- possibly approval number -->
        <code code="C73594" displayName="NDA"
              codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1" />
        <!-- possibly other attributes in the marketing category -->
      </approval>
    </subjectOf>
  </manufacturedProduct>
</subject>
```

The following is an example for a device:

```
<subject>
  <manufacturedProduct>
    <manufacturedProduct>
      <code code="Device Item Code" codeSystem="Item Code System"/>
      <name>proprietary name <suffix>suffix to name</suffix></name>
      <desc>Brief description of product (up to 512 characters)</desc>

      <asSpecializedKind>
        <generalizedMaterialKind>
          <code code="product classification code"
                codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.303"
                displayName="display name"/>
        </generalizedMaterialKind>
      </asSpecializedKind>
    </manufacturedProduct>
```

```
    <subjectOf>
      <approval>
        <!-- possibly approval number -->
        <code code="C80441" displayName="Premarket Application"
              codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1" />
        <!-- possibly other attributes in the marketing category -->
      </approval>
    </subjectOf>
  </manufacturedProduct>
</subject>
```

Validation Procedures

3.1.1.1 There is an Item Code, except for part products not requiring an Item Code or if the document type is *Human Compounded Drug Reporting* (75031-5), *Animal Compounded Drug Label* (77647-6), *Indexing - Biologic or Drug Substance* (77648-4) or *REMS Document* (82351-8) or *Indexing – REMS* (82353-4).

3.1.1.2 General rules about the Item Code are:

3.1.1.3 Code system is 2.16.840.1.113883.6.69 (NDC, NHRIC), 1.3.160 (GS1), 2.16.840.1.113883.6.40 (HIBCC), or 2.16.840.1.113883.6.18 (ISBT 128), except if the document is a Indexing - Product Concept (73815-3).

3.1.1.4 Code is compliant with the code system's allocation rules.

3.1.1.5 There is a name, i.e., proprietary name of the product as used in product labeling or in the catalog, except if the document is a Indexing - Product Concept (73815-3).

3.1.1.6 If the document type is *Human Compounded Drug Label* (75031-5) then there may be an item code.

3.1.2 Equivalence to other Products, Product Source

The following is for referencing information already submitted for a source drug:

```
<subject>
  <manufacturedProduct>
    <manufacturedProduct>
      <code code="NDC Product Code" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.69"/>
      <name>proprietary name <suffix>suffix to name</suffix></name>

      <asEquivalentEntity classCode="EQUIV">
        <code code="C64637" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"/>
        <definingMaterialKind>
          <code code="source NDC Product Code"
                codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.69"/>
        </definingMaterialKind>
      </asEquivalentEntity>
```

This is a special case of referencing other products for various purposes. Another purpose is for products that are updated with improvement, where it may be useful to indicate a succession to a previous version of the product identified by the item code of the predecessor product. This can be done using the equivalence relationship with <asEquivalentEntity> with a different Role code as in Table 2:

```
<manufacturedProduct>
   <manufacturedProduct>
      ...
<asEquivalentEntity classCode="EQUIV">
   <code code="C?????" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"/>
   <definingMaterialKind>
      <code code="81234567890008" codeSystem="1.3.160"/>
```

The following equivalence codes are defined:

Table 2:Equivalence Codes

Equivalence	Code
Same	C64637
Predecessor Product	*pending*

Product source may be specified under a product

```
<subject>
   <manufacturedProduct>
      <manufacturedProduct>
         <asEquivalentEntity>
```

or under parts

```
<part>
   <partProduct>
      <asEquivalentEntity>
```

Validation Procedures

3.1.2.1 As equivalent entity class code is as above

3.1.2.2 If there is a classCode, it is “EQUIV”.

3.1.2.3 Code and code system are as above, except if the document is a Indexing - Product Concept (73815-3) or Indexing - Warning Letter Alert (77288-9).

3.1.2.4 Defining material kind code (source NDC product code) matches an Item Code in an SPL file with a different set id

3.1.2.5 Equivalent Item Code is not the same as the Item Code for the product

3.1.2.6 Equivalent Item Code is not the same as the Item Code for another equivalence stated for this product, except if the document is a Indexing - Product Concept (73815-3).

3.1.2.7 If the NDC product source (equivalent product) is present, then the active ingredient UNII and active ingredient strength are the same as that of product source.

3.1.2.8 If the NDC product source (equivalent product) is present, then the product characteristics of size are the same as that of product source.

3.1.2.9 If the NDC product source (equivalent product) is present, then the product characteristics of shape is the same as that of product source.

3.1.2.10 If the NDC product source (equivalent product) is present, then the product characteristics of color are the same as that of product source.

3.1.2.11 There is only one product source per product.

3.1.2.12 If the document type is *Human Compounded Drug Label* (75031-5) or *Animal Compounded Drug Label* (77647-6) then there is no product source.

3.1.3 Additional Identifiers for this Product

A multitude of other identifiers may be assigned to some products by various parties, manufacturers, distributors, wholesalers, regulators. These identifiers are of a varying quality in terms of control for uniqueness and meaning. They may be unique item codes from other ISO 15459 item code systems, or they may be less well defined codes such as “model number” or “catalog number” etc. While those “model numbers” or “catalog numbers” are often not safe for referencing, such identifiers are customer facing and may encode minor product variants, which would be recognized by customers and hence listing such identifier cross references can aid in finding the correct item code.

```
<manufacturedProduct>
   <manufacturedProduct>
      ...
<asIdentifiedEntity classCode="IDENT">
  <id extension="other identifier" root="other identifier root"/>
  <code code="other identifier type code"
        codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
        displayName="model number"/>
```

HL7 requires any identifier to be made globally unique, therefore submitters must acquire an OID of their own through any of several sources (e.g. HL7 provides a free OID assignment service). Submitters must not allow conflicting assignments of model numbers among their own products. Submitters can still create unique

identifiers from these model numbers by giving different root OIDs for each kind of identifiers that may be in conflict. Once a company has acquired a root OID this root OID can be freely sub-divided. For example, ACME Fine Devices Inc. may have acquired the OID 2.16.840.1.113883.3.98765 from the HL7 registry. ACME then decided to use a sub-branch .2 under their OID to manage model numbers for the models from models release before 2007 and sub-branch .5 for models released after 2007. There is no specific rule that must be obeyed when sub-dividing OIDs as long as it results in the concatenation of model number code and codeSystem OID to be a unique identifier.

Different types of such identifications may be assigned different codes from the NCI Thesaurus for Model Number, Catalog Number and possibly other “types” of numbers:

Table 3:Miscellaneous Identifier Types

Identifier Type	Code	Description
Model Number	C99286	the exact model number found on the device label or accompanying packaging.
Catalog Number	C99285	the exact number as it appears in the manufacturer's catalog, device labeling, or accompanying packaging
Reference Number	C99287	any secondary product identifier

3.1.4 Ingredient

Ingredients may be specified for products

```
<subject>
   <manufacturedProduct>
      <manufacturedProduct>
         <ingredient/>
```

and parts.

```
<part>
   <partProduct>
      <ingredient/>
```

Ingredient information includes the class code specifying the type of ingredient (e.g., active, inactive), code, name, and strength, and possibly active moiety name(s) and identifier and a reference ingredient name and identifier.

```
<ingredient classCode=”class code including basis of strength”>
  <quantity>
    <numerator value="value" unit="UCUM code"/>
    <denominator value="value" unit=" UCUM code"/>
  </quantity>
```

```
  <ingredientSubstance>
    <code code="UNII" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.4.9"/>
    <name>active ingredient name</name>
    <activeMoiety>
      <activeMoiety>
        <code code="UNII" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.4.9"/>
        <name>active moiety name</name>
      </activeMoiety>
    </activeMoiety>

    <asEquivalentSubstance>
      <definingSubstance>
        <code code="UNII" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.4.9"/>
        <name>reference substance name</name>
      </definingSubstance>

    </asEquivalentSubstance>
  </ingredientSubstance>
</ingredient>
```

Devices too may have active ingredients as discussed above (device with embedded ingredient.)

The ingredient element is also used to specify that a product "may contain" a certain substance (e.g., latex, milk, nuts) or that it "does not contain" such substances (e.g., wheat gluten).

"May contain" is expressed by specifying the ingredient using the class code "CNTM" without any quantity; e.g., product may contains latex:

```
<ingredient classCode="CNTM">
  <ingredientSubstance>
    <code code="2LQ0UUW8IN" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.4.9"/>
    <name>NATURAL LATEX RUBBER</name>
```

"Does not contain" is expressed by specifying the ingredient using the class code "CNTM" without a quantity with numerator 0 (zero); e.g. product is gluten free:

```
<ingredient classCode="CNTM">
  <quantity>
    <numerator value="0" unit="1"/>
    <denominator value="1" unit="1"/>
  </quantity>
  <ingredientSubstance>
    <code code="1534K8653J" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.4.9"/>
    <name>WHEAT GLUTEN</name>
```

If the ingredient comes from a product (such as in Human Compounded Drug Labels, 75031-5) one can specify the product item code for the ingredient as a source product, or, when the product item code is an NDC, called simply the ingredient's source NDC.

```
<ingredient classCode="ingredient class code e.g., ACTI(M/B/R)">
  ...
  <ingredientSubstance .../>
  <subjectOf>
    <substanceSpecification>
      <code code="Soure NDC" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.69"/>
    </substanceSpecification>
  </subjectOf>
</ingredient>
```

Validation Procedures

3.1.4.1 There is a class code.

3.1.4.2 There may be a strength with a numerator and denominator

3.1.4.3 Numerator and denominator have a value greater than zero and a unit, except the numerator when the ingredient class code is "CNTM".

3.1.4.4 Unit comes from the *UCUM units of measures* list

3.1.4.5 For percentages numerator unit is not 1, instead use a volume unit for volume fractions and a mass unit for mass fractions.

3.1.4.6 The denominators values and units for all ingredients in this product are the same.

3.1.4.7 There is an ingredient code with code and code system

3.1.4.8 Code system is 2.16.840.1.113883.4.9

3.1.4.9 The same ingredient substance code (UNII) is not used more than once per product.

3.1.4.10 There is an ingredient name.

3.1.4.11 Name matches the code (UNII)

3.1.4.12 If the document type is Human Compounded Drug Label (75031-5) or Animal Compounded Drug Label (77647-6) then active ingredients have an ingredient source product item code (ingredient source NDC).

3.1.4.13 If the document type is not Human Compounded Drug Label (75031-5) or Animal Compounded Drug Label (77647-6) then there is no ingredient source product item code (ingredient source NDC).

3.1.4.14 Ingredient source product item code (source NDC) has been previously submitted (i.e. is a known listed product).

3.1.4.15 The source of the active ingredient (bulk or finished drug(s)) identified by the item code (source NDC product code) has that same active ingredient as the compounded drug product.

3.1.4.16 The source of the active ingredient (bulk or finished drug(s)) identified by the item code (source NDC product code) can consist of more than one active ingredient, and in that case all the source's active ingredients must be mentioned in the compounded drug product.

3.1.5 Packaging

The packaging includes the quantity of product in the package and the package type and Package Item Code (such as NDC Package Code or other Item Code for the package).

Packaging may be specified for the product,

```
<manufacturedProduct>
   <manufacturedProduct>
      <asContent/>
```

for parts,

```
<part>
   <partProduct>
      <asContent/>
```

and for packages.

```
<asContent>
   <containerPackagedProduct>
      <asContent/>
```

The format for packaging specification is:

For example,

```
<asContent>
  <quantity>
    <numerator value="value" unit="UCUM code"/>
    <denominator value="1"/>
  </quantity>
```

```
  <containerPackagedProduct>
    <code code="Package Item Code" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.69"/>
    <formCode code="value" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
              displayName="display name"/>
  </containerPackagedProduct>
</asContent>
```

Validation Procedures

3.1.5.1 A product may have an “as content” (package information) element (optional for parts)

3.1.5.2 Quantity (for package information) includes a numerator and denominator

3.1.5.3 Numerator (for package amount) has a value greater than zero and a unit

3.1.5.4 If the product has parts, then the initial numerator value and unit is “1”

3.1.5.5 Unit of the numerator (for package amount) of the initial package is the same as the units for the denominators of all the ingredient quantities (strengths)

3.1.5.6 Unit of the numerator (for package amount) of an outer package is the same as the unit for the denominator of the quantity of the inner package

3.1.5.7 Denominator has value 1 and either no unit or unit “1”

3.1.5.8 If the document type is not for bulk ingredient (53409-9), Drug for Further Processing (78744-0), OTC animal drug (50577-6), OTC type A (50576-8), OTC type B (50574-3), OTC type C (50573-5), prescription animal drug (50578-4), VFD type A (50575-0), VFD type B (50572-7), VFD type C (50571-9), Cosmetic (58474-8), Dietary Supplement (58476-3), Medical food (58475-5), Human compounded drug (75031-5), Animal Compounded Drug Label (77647-6), Lot Distribution Data (66105-8), Licensed Vaccine Bulk Intermediate (53406-5), or Recombinant Deoxyribonucleic Acid Construct Label (78745-7)**,** then a combination product type characteristic is on the inner-most packaging.

3.1.5.9 There is a form code and display name

3.1.5.10 Code system for form code is 2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1

3.1.5.11 Display name matches form code

3.1.5.12 There is a Package Item Code with code and code system for outermost package, except for parts or if the document type is Human Compounded Drug Label (75031-5) or Animal Compounded Drug Label (77647-6).

3.1.5.13 If document type is 60684-8 (Cellular Therapy), 60683-0 (Plasma Derivative), 53404-0 (Vaccine Label), then there is a package item code with code and code system for the inner, unit of use package, except if the inner package is wrapped into a pouch (C43200) the item code may be on the pouch level.

3.1.5.14 If the document type is Human Compounded Drug Label (75031-5) or Animal Compounded Drug Label (77647-6) and if there is a product NDC, then there should be an outer package NDC.

3.1.5.15 If the Package Item Code has been previously submitted, then the package form code and quantity value and unit are the same as in the most recent submission for this item code.

3.1.5.16 If the Package Item Code is mentioned elsewhere in the document, then the package form code and quantity value and unit are the same and the content of both packages have an Item Code that is the same.

3.1.5.17 Package Item Code does not match any other Package Item Code in the same package hierarchy.

3.1.5.18 If the package item code is an NDC/NHRIC (i.e., if the root is “2.16.840.1.113883.6.69”), then the following procedures apply:

3.1.5.19 NDC/NHRIC package item code is 10 digits (excluding any hyphens).

3.1.5.20 NDC/NHRIC package item code contains three segments divided by hyphens.

3.1.5.21 The first two segments of the NDC/NHRIC package item code matches the NDC/NHRIC product/item code.

3.1.5.22 The third segment of the NDC/NHRIC package item code is numeric.

3.1.5.23 If the package item code is an ISBT 128 code (i.e., if the root is “2.16.840.1.113883.6.18”), then the following procedures apply:

3.1.5.24 ISBT 128 package item code has three segments divided by hyphens.

3.1.5.25 The first two segments of the ISBT 128 package item code matches the ISBT 128 Product Item Code.

3.1.5.26 The third segment contains two digits.

3.1.6 Kits, Parts, Components and Accessories

Products may be combined in various ways such as:

- Drug kit with a device part
- Device kit with a drug part
- Device with an embedded drug
- Drug in a delivery device
- Products sold separately but meant to be used together

Kits and Parts: When products have more than one part, each part is described under <partProduct>. The total amount of the part in the product is included as follows:

```
<part>
  <quantity>
    <numerator value="total amount of part in product" unit="UCUM code"/>
    <denominator value="1"/>
  </quantity>
  <partProduct>
     <!-- same as above for drug or device. -->
```

Currently, when a drug product has parts, it is considered a Kit indicated by the formCode for KIT:

```
<manufacturedProduct>
   <manufacturedProduct>
      <code code="11234560012349" codeSystem="1.3.160"/>
      <name>Easy-Go PreciFuse PorterPump Kit</name>
      <formCode code=" C47916" displayName="KIT"
                codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"/>

      <part><!-- ... -->
```

Device products may also be kits (in this case a device with FDA product classification code but also with formCode specifying KIT. However, devices themselves may also be specified with parts, such as distinguishing component options or field replaceable parts, in this case the top-level device need not have a formCode for KIT:

```
<manufacturedProduct>
   <manufacturedProduct>
      <code code="item code of device" codeSystem="code system OID"/>
      <name>name of device</name>
      <desc>brief description of device</desc>

      <asSpecializedKind ... product classification for device ... />

      <part>
         <quantity>
            <numerator value="1"/>
            <denominator value="1"/>
         </quantity>
```

```
         <partProduct>
            <code code="item code of part" codeSystem="code system OID"/>
            <name>name of part</name>
            <desc>brief description of device part</desc>
```

Drug Kit with a Device Part: This sort of kit has been known from SPL R4 as well, examples being drugs sold as a kit with an applicator device.

```
<manufacturedProduct>
   <manufacturedProduct>
      <code code="NDC code of kit" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.69"/>
      <name>name of kit</name>
      <formCode code="C47916" displayName="KIT"
                codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"/>
      <asEntityWithGeneric .../>

      <part>
         <quantity>
            <numerator value="amount of this part's content in one kit"
                       unit="unit for amount"/>
            <denominator value="1"/>
         </quantity>

         <partProduct>
            <code code="NDC code of drug part"
                  codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.69"/>
            <name>name of drug part</name>
            <formCode code="form code of drug part"
                      displayName="form name of drug part"
                      codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"/>

            <ingredient ... />

            <asContent>
               <quantity>
                  <numerator value="amount of this part in its package"
                             unit="unit of amount"/>
                  <denominator value="1"/>
               </quantity>

               <containerPackagedProduct>
                  <code code="NDC code of part's package"
                        codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.69"/>
                  <formCode code="package type"
                            displayName="package type name"
                            codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"/>
               </containerPackagedProduct>
            </asContent>
         </partProduct>
      </part>

      <part>
         <quantity>
            <numerator value="amount of this device part in one kit"/>
            <denominator value="1"/>
         </quantity>

         <partProduct>
            <code code="item code of this device part"
                  codeSystem="item code system OID"/>
            <name>name of device part</name>
            <desc>description of device part</desc>
```

```
            <asSpecializedKind>
               <generalizedMaterialKind>
                  <code code="product classification code of device part"
                        codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.303"
                        displayName="display name of device part"/>
               </generalizedMaterialKind>
            </asSpecializedKind>
         </partProduct>
      </part>
```

Device Kit with a Drug Part:

```
<manufacturedProduct>
   <manufacturedProduct>
      <code code="item code of device kit"
            codeSystem="item code system OID"/>
      <name>name of kit</name>
      <desc>brief description of kit</desc>
      <formCode code="C47916" displayName="KIT"
                codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"/>

      <asSpecializedKind>
        <generalizedMaterialKind>
          <code code="product classification code of kit"
                displayName="display name of kit"
                codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.303"/>
        </generalizedMaterialKind>
      </asSpecializedKind>

      <part>
         same as device part above
      </part>

      <part>
         same as drug part above
      </part>
```

Device with an embedded drug: For example, a drug eluting stent with an embedded active ingredient. Notice that such products do not involve kits and parts:

```
<manufacturedProduct>
   <manufacturedProduct>
      <code code="device item code"
            codeSystem="device item code system OID"/>
      <name>device name</name>
      <desc>brief description</desc>

      <asSpecializedKind>
        <generalizedMaterialKind>
          <code code="product classification code of device"
                displayName="display name of device"
                codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.303"/>
        </generalizedMaterialKind>
      </asSpecializedKind>
```

```
      <ingredient classCode="ACTIB">
         <quantity .../>
         <ingredientSubstance>
            <code code="UNII code of active ingredient"
                  codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.4.9"/>
            <name>paclitaxel</name>
```

Drug in a delivery device: For example, drug in pre-filled syringe. Note that the syringe filled with the drug is a different product than the empty syringe. Hence it would not be correct to put the item code for the empty syringe on the one filled with the drug. In fact, since the pre-filled syringe already has (or should have) an NDC code, there is no need for another item code for it. However, one may want to refer to the item code for the empty syringe as a generalization of the filled syringe:

```
<manufacturedProduct>
  <manufacturedProduct>
    <code code="NDC code drug"
          codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.69"/>
    <name>name of drug</name>
    <formCode code="form code of drug"
              displayName="form display name of drug"
              codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"/>

    <ingredient classCode="ACTIB">
      <!-- active ingredient -->
    </ingredient>

    <asContent>
      <quantity>
        <numerator value="amount of drug in prefilled device"
                   unit="unit of amount"/>
        <denominator value="1"/>
      </quantity>

      <containerPackagedProduct>
        <code code="NDC code for prefilled device"
              codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.69"/>
        <formCode code="form code of prefilled device"
                  displayName="form display name of prefilled device"
                  codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"/>

        <asSpecializedKind>
          <generalizedMaterialKind>
            <code code="item code of empty device"
                  codeSystem="item code system of empty device"/>
            <desc>brief description of empty device</desc>

            <asSpecializedKind>
              <generalizedMaterialKind>
                <code code="product classification code of device"
                      displayName="display name of device"
                      codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.303"/>
              </generalizedMaterialKind>
            </asSpecializedKind>
```

Products sold separately but meant to be used together: when products are used together but packaged separately, the data element <asPartOfAssembly> is used to identify the other product. The products could be drugs or devices.

```
<manufacturedProduct>
  <manufacturedProduct>
    <code code="item code of device" codeSystem="code system OID"/>
    <name>name of device</name>
    <desc>brief description of device</desc>

    <asSpecializedKind ... product classification for device .../>

    <asPartOfAssembly>
      <quantity>
        <numerator value="1"/>
        <denominator value="1"/>
      </quantity>

      <wholeProduct><!-- this is the assembly, but has no identifier -->
        <part>
          <quantity>
            <numerator value="1"/>
            <denominator value="1"/>
          </quantity>
          <partProduct>
            <code code="item code of accessory component"
                  codeSystem="code system OID"/>
            <name>name of accessory component</name>
            <desc>brief description of accessory component</desc>

            <asSpecializedKind ... product classification for device .../>
```

Parts may be specified for the product,

```
<manufacturedProduct>
  <manufacturedProduct>
     <part/>
```

and for part products.

```
<part>
  <partProduct>
     <part/>
```

Validation Procedures

3.1.6.1 If the product form code is ‘C47916’ (KIT), then there is one or more parts

3.1.6.2 Each part has an overall quantity

3.1.6.3 If there is an “as content” (package information) data element in the part, then the numerator unit is the same as the numerator unit for the “as content” data element

3.1.6.4 If there is no “as content” (package information) data element in the part, then the numerator unit is 1, except if the document is a Indexing - Product Concept (73815-3).

3.1.6.5 If there is a code, then the general rules for product code apply (see 3.1.1.2ff).

3.1.6.6 There is a name, except if the document is a Indexing - Product Concept (73815-3).

3.1.6.7 Procedures for source, ingredients, characteristics and packaging are the same as for products without parts

3.1.7 Marketing Category and Application Number

The approval structure specifies in the <code> the marketing category under which the product is approved for marketing. Products marketed under an approved application have an application number in the <id extension> and application tracking system under <id root>. Products marketed under a monograph provide the regulatory citation for the monograph <id extension> and the Code of Federal Regulations under <id root>. If there is no application number or monograph citation, the id element is omitted.

```
<subjectOf>
  <approval>
    <id extension="application or monograph number"
        root="FDA document tracking system OID or CFR OID"/>
    <code code="code for marketing category"
          codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
          displayName="display name"/>
    <effectiveTime>
      <low value="approval date"/>
    </effectiveTime>

    <author>
      <territorialAuthority>
        <territory>
          <code code="USA" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.28"/>
        </territory>
      </territorialAuthority>
    </author>
  </approval>
</subjectOf>
```

Marketing category is connected through the <subjectOf> element which may appear on the main product:

```
<subject>
   <manufacturedProduct>
      <manufacturedProduct/>
      <subjectOf/>
```

or on parts:

```
<part>
   <partProduct/>
   <subjectOf/>
```

Example:

```
<subjectOf>
   <approval>
      <id extension="NDA123456" root="2.16.840.1.113883.3.150"/>
      <code  code="C73594"
             codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
             displayName="NDA"/>
      <author>
         <territorialAuthority>
            <territory>
               <code code="USA" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.28"/>
```

Validation Procedures

3.1.7.1 There is one marketing category for every product and product part, except if the document is a Indexing - Product Concept (73815-3) or Indexing - Warning Letter Alert (77288-9).

3.1.7.2 There is a marketing category code.

3.1.7.3 Code comes from the *Marketing category* list.

3.1.7.4 Display name matches the code

3.1.7.5 Code system is 2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1

3.1.7.6 Territorial authority is as above

Marketing Category vs. Application Number

The following are validation procedures relating marketing category to application numbers:

3.1.7.7 If the code is C73583 (ANADA), C73584 (ANDA), C73585 (BLA), C73588 (conditional NADA), C73593 (NADA), C73594 (NDA), C73605 (NDA authorized generic), C75302 (IND), C80438 (Exempt device), C80440 (Humanitarian Device Exemption), C80441 (Premarket Application), C80442 (Premarket Notification), or C92556 (Legally Marketed Unapproved New Animal Drugs for Minor Species), then the id root is 2.16.840.1.113883.3.150 (FDA application tracking system).

3.1.7.8 If the code is C73603 (OTC monograph final) or C73604 (OTC monograph not final), then the id root is 2.16.840.1.113883.3.149 (Code of Federal Regulations)

3.1.7.9 If the code is C73583 (ANADA), then the id extension has the prefix "ANADA" followed by 6 digits

3.1.7.10 If the code is C73584 (ANDA), then the id extension has the prefix "ANDA" or "BA" followed by 6 digits

3.1.7.11 If the code is C73585 (BLA), then the id extension has the prefix "BLA" followed by 6 digits

3.1.7.12 If the code is C73593 (NADA) or C73588 (Conditional NADA), then the id extension has the prefix "NADA" followed by 6 digits

3.1.7.13 If the code is C73594 (NDA) or C73605 NDA authorized generic), then the id extension has the prefix "NDA" or "BN" followed by 6 digits

3.1.7.14 If the code is C75302 (IND), then the id extension has the prefix "IND" followed by 6 digits

3.1.7.15 If the code is C73604 (OTC monograph not final), then at least one active ingredient code (if any) matches an entry in the *OTC validation-not final* list (see FDA SPL web page for list http://www.fda.gov/ForIndustry/DataStandards/StructuredProductLabeling/default.htm) for that monograph citation (id extension).

3.1.7.16 If the code is C73603 (OTC monograph final), then at least one active ingredient code (if any) matches an entry in the *OTC validation-final* list (see FDA SPL web page for list http://www.fda.gov/ForIndustry/DataStandards/StructuredProductLabeling/default.htm) for that monograph citation (id extension).

3.1.7.17 If the code is C73603 (OTC monograph final), then *all* active ingredient codes (if any) match an entry in the *OTC validation-final-all* list for that monograph citation (id extension).

3.1.7.18 If the code is C92556 (Legally Marketed Unapproved New Animal Drugs for Minor Species), then the id extension has the prefix "MIF" followed by 6 digits.

3.1.7.19 If the code is C80438 (Exempt device), then the id extension consists of 3 letters

3.1.7.20 If the code is C80440 (Humanitarian Device Exemption), then the id extension has a prefix "H" followed by 6 digits

3.1.7.21 If the code is C80441 (Premarket Application), then the id extension has a prefix “P” or “BP” followed by 6 digits

3.1.7.22 If the code is C80442 (Premarket Notification), then the id extension has a prefix “K” or “BK” followed by 6 digits.

3.1.7.23 If the code is not C73583 (ANADA), C73584 (ANDA), C73585 (BLA), C73588 (Conditional NADA), C73593 (NADA), C73594 (NDA), C73603 (OTC monograph final), C73604 (OTC monograph not final), C73605 (NDA authorized generic), C75302 (IND), C80438 (Exempt device), C80440 (Humanitarian Device Exemption), C80441 (Premarket Application), C80442 (Premarket Notification), C95600 (Approved drug product manufactured exclusively for private label distributor), or C92556 (Legally Marketed Unapproved New Animal Drugs for Minor Species), then there is no id (application number or regulatory citation).

3.1.7.24 If the marketing category is C95600 (Approved drug product manufactured exclusively for private label distributor), then there is an id (application number or regulatory citation).

3.1.7.25 If the marketing category is C95600 (Approved drug product manufactured exclusively for private label distributor), then the id extension has the prefix “NDA”, “ANDA”, or “BLA” followed by 6 digits

Application Number Consistency

3.1.7.26 If the code is C73584 (ANDA), C73585 (BLA), or C73594 (NDA) and the SPL document type is not Lot Distribution Data (66105-8) or Vaccine (53404-0) and the application number was already submitted, then the active ingredient UNIIs are the same as in any previous submission of a product with the same application number.

Application Number Consistency

3.1.7.27 There may be an approval date (effective time).

3.1.7.28 Approval date (effectiveTime) has a low boundary.

3.1.7.29 Approval date has no high boundary.

3.1.7.30 Approval date has at least the precision of day (YYYYMMDD.)

3.1.7.31 If the marketing category code is not C73584 (ANDA), C73585 (BLA), or C73594 (NDA), then there is no approval date.

3.1.8 Marketing status

The marketing status provides information on when the product is on or off the market.

```
<subject>
  <manufacturedProduct>...</manufacturedProduct>
  <subjectOf>
    <marketingAct>
      <code code="C53292" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"/>
      <statusCode code="active"/>
      <effectiveTime>
        <low value="20040120"/>
```

The <code> indicates the activity of “marketing”. The status of the product is described in the <statusCode> as either “active” for being on the market or “completed” when marketing is done the product is no longer going to be available on the market. The date when the product is on or off the market is included in the <effectiveTime>. The date when the product is on the market is characterized by the <low value>.

Example of a currently marketed product:

```
<subjectOf>
  <marketingAct>
    <code code="C53292" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.112883.3.26.1.1"/>
    <statusCode code="active"/>
    <effectiveTime>
      <low value="date when on the market"/>
    </effectiveTime>
  </marketingAct>
</subjectOf>
```

The date off the market such as the expiration date of the last lot released to the market is characterized by the <high value>.

Example of a product that is off the market:

```
<subjectOf>
  <marketingAct>
    <code code=”C53292” codeSystem=”2.16.840.1.112883.3.26.1.1”/>
    <statusCode code="completed"/>
    <effectiveTime>
      <low value="date when the product is on the market"/>
      <high value="date when the product is going to be off the market"/>
    </effectiveTime>
  </marketingAct>
</subjectOf>
```

For some types of products, a marketing status may be provided on the package level:

```
<asContent>
  <containerPackagedProduct>...</containerPackagedProduct>
  <subjectOf>
    <marketingAct>
      <code code="C53292" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"/>
      <statusCode code="active"/>
      <effectiveTime>
        <low value="20040120"/>
```

Validation Procedures

3.1.8.1 There is one marketing status for each top-level product (part products do not need this), except if the document type is a Animal Compounded Drug (77647-6) or Human Compounded Drug (75031-5) or Indexing - Product Concept (73815-3) or lot distribution data (66105-8) or Indexing - Warning Letter Alert (77288-9) or Indexing - Biologic or Drug Substance (77648-4) or Indexing – REMS (82353-4).

3.1.8.2 There is not more than one marketing status on any one item.

3.1.8.3 Code is C53292 and code system is 2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1.

3.1.8.4 Marketing status code is *active* or *completed*

3.1.8.5 If the status code is *active*, then there is a low value (marketing start date) and no high value (marketing end date)

3.1.8.6 If the marketing status code is *completed*, then there is a low and high value

3.1.8.7 The effective time low (marketing start date) and high boundary (marketing end date) have at least the precision of day in the format YYYYMMDD

3.1.8.8 If there is a high value (marketing start date), then it is not less than the low value (marketing end date).

3.1.8.9 A marketing status can not be on an inner package.

3.1.8.10 A marketing status can not be on a package for a part of a kit.

3.1.8.11 If the marketing start or end date is on a package, then the start date is not before the marketing start date of the product and the end date not after the end date of the product.

3.1.8.12 If any of the products in the document has the application number prefix BA or BN, then there is no package marketing status.

3.1.8.13 A marketing status can only be on a package in documents of types *Human Prescription Drug Label* (34391-3), *Human OTC Drug Label* (34390-5), *Drug for Further Processing (78744-0)*, or *Bulk Ingredient* (53409-9).

3.1.8.14 If the document type is *Human Compounded Drug Label* (75031-5) or *Animal Compounded Drug Label* (77647-6) then there is no marketing status.

3.1.8.15 If the product is regulated by CDER, then the marketing start or end date are present at the outermost package level, except for Human compounded Drug (75031-5).

3.1.9 Characteristics

Many characteristics may be specified for products as specified later for specific product types. In general, the characteristic structure allows specifying any properties of the product in a code-value pair, the code saying which property is being specified, the value saying what the property is for the given product. The characteristics structure connects to the product Role through the subjectOf element.

```
<manufacturedProduct>
  <manufacturedProduct>
      ...
  </manufacturedProduct>
  <subjectOf>
    <characteristic>
      <code code="characteristic code"
            codeSystem="characteristic code system"/>
      <value xsi:type="characteristic value type" ...>
```

Some characteristics may be specified for packaged products:

```
<manufacturedProduct>
  <manufacturedProduct>
    ...
    <asContent>
      <containerPackagedProduct>
      ...
      </containerPackagedProduct>
      <subjectOf>
        <characteristic>
          <code code="characteristic code"
                codeSystem="characteristic code system"/>
          <value xsi:type="characteristic value type" ...>
```

Characteristics listed in Table 7 use one of a number of different data types. Each data type uses slightly different XML elements and attributes as shown in the templates below:

Characteristic of type physical quantity (PQ):

```
<subjectOf>
   <characteristic>
     <code code="characteristic code"
           codeSystem="characteristic code system"/>
     <value xsi:type="PQ" value="quantity value" unit="quantity unit">
```

Characteristic of type number (REAL):

```
<subjectOf>
   <characteristic>
     <code code="characteristic code"
           codeSystem="characteristic code system"/>
     <value xsi:type="REAL" value="quantity value"/>
```

Characteristic of type integer number (INT):

```
<subjectOf>
   <characteristic>
     <code code="characteristic code"
           codeSystem="characteristic code system"/>
     <value xsi:type="INT" value="quantity value"/>
```

Characteristic of coded type (CV):

```
<subjectOf>
  <characteristic>
    <code code="characteristic code"
          codeSystem="characteristic code system"/>
    <value xsi:type="CV" code="value code"
           codeSystem="value code system OID"
           displayName="value code display name">
```

Characteristic of type character string (ST):

```
<subjectOf>
  <characteristic>
    <code code="characteristic code"
          codeSystem="characteristic code system"/>
    <value xsi:type="ST">value string</value>
```

Characteristic of type interval of physical quantity (IVL<PQ>):

```
<subjectOf>
  <characteristic>
    <code code="characteristic code"
          codeSystem="characteristic code system"/>
    <value xsi:type="IVL_PQ">
      <low value="quantity value low boundary" unit="quantity unit"/>
      <high value="quantity value high boundary" unit="quantity unit"/>
    </value>
```

Characteristic of type Boolean (true/false value)

```
<subjectOf>
  <characteristic>
    <code code="characteristic code"
          codeSystem="characteristic code system"/>
    <value xsi:type="BL" value="true or false"/>
```

Table 4: Characteristic codes and code systems.

Name	Code System OID / Code	Data Type	Description
SPL Characteristics	2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.19255		Used early on with Existing SPL for drugs characteristics codes that are possibly applicable for devices:
	SPLSIZE	PQ	Greatest dimension in millimeter
	SPLCOLOR	CV	color code from NCI Thesaurus
	SPLIMAGE	ED	Photographic image of the product for the purpose of identification, taken under standardized conditions.
LOINC	2.16.840.1.113883.6.1		Used for metrologically well defined properties.
NCI Thesaurus	2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1		Used rarely (if at all) for characteristic codes.

Validation Procedures

3.1.9.1 There is a characteristic property code with code and code system

3.1.9.2 Characteristic property code system is 2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.19255, 2.16.840.1.113883.6.1, or 2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1.

3.1.9.3 There is a characteristic value with specified type appropriate for the characteristic property.

3.1.9.4 Value type is PQ, INT, IVL_PQ, CV, CE, ST, ED, or BL

3.1.10 Combination Product Type

Combination products are defined in 21 CFR 3.2(e).

To mark products as combination products, the nearest combining package should bear the combination product type characteristic:

```
<manufacturedProduct>
  <manufacturedProduct>
    ...
    <asContent>
      ...
      <subjectOf>
        <characteristic>
          <code code="SPLCMBPRDTP"
                codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.19255"/>
          <value code="C102835"
             codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1" xsi:type="CV"
             displayName="Type 2: Prefilled Drug Delivery Device/System">
```

Validation Procedures

3.1.10.1 Code and code system are as above

3.1.10.2 Value code system is 2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1

3.1.10.3 Value comes from the Combination Product Type list.

3.1.10.4 Display name matches the value code

3.1.10.5 If the document type is for bulk ingredient (53409-9), OTC animal drug (50577-6), OTC type A (50576-8), OTC type B (50574-3), OTC type C (50573-5), prescription animal drug (50578-4), VFD type A (50575-0), VFD type B (50572-7), VFD type C (50571-9), Cosmetic (58474-8), Dietary Supplement (58476-3), Medical food (58475-5), Human compounded Drug (75031-5), Licensed Vaccine Bulk Intermediate (53406-5), Drug for Further Processing (78744-0) or Animal Compounded Drug Label (77647-6) then there is no combination product type characteristic on any package.

3.1.11 Production Amount

The production amount for a package is specified as:

```
<manufacturedProduct>
  <manufacturedProduct>
    ...
    <asContent>
      ...
      <subjectOf>
        <characteristic>
            <code code="SPLPRODUCTIONAMOUNT"
                  codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.19255"/>
            <value xsi:type="INT" value="10000"/>
```

Unlimited production amounts are specified as:

```
            <value xsi:type="INT" nullFlavor="PINF"/>
```

Validation Procedures

3.1.11.1 Code and code system are as above

3.1.11.2 The value is an integer number or null flavor “PINF” to indicate unlimited.

3.2 Drug, Dietary Supplement and Medical Food Products

The drug, dietary supplement and medical food product data elements includes the product codes, proprietary and non proprietary name, dosage form, ingredient and active moiety name, ingredient identifier, ingredient strength, package quantity, type and code, marketing category, marketing status, dosage form appearance, DEA schedule, and route of administration.

Drug products are those products with the appropriate marketing categories listed in Table 1. Dietary supplement are those products that are associated with the dietary supplement (C86952) marketing category. Medical foods are associated with the medical food marketing category (C86964).

The drug product consists of a product item code (NDC for drugs and NHRIC for dietary supplements or medical foods), proprietary and non proprietary name, and dosage form. These are children of <manufacturedProduct>. The proprietary name is the name as it appears on the label divided between <name> and <suffix>. The <name> is the initial portion of the proprietary name describing the ingredients without any other descriptors including trademarks and dosage forms. If necessary, <suffix> is used for descriptors such as “extended release”. When using the <suffix>, a space after the proprietary name is added as necessary. If there is no proprietary name, the non proprietary name is used without any descriptors. The dosage form is described in <formCode>. The <genericMedicine><name> is the non proprietary name of the product.

3.2.1 Code and Name

```
<section>
  <subject>
    <manufacturedProduct>
      <manufacturedProduct>
        <code code="0001-0001" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.69"/>

        <name>Tazmin <suffix>XR</suffix></name>

        <formCode code="C42998"
                  codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
                  displayName="tablet"/>

        <asEntityWithGeneric>
          <genericMedicine>
            <name>tazminate hydrochloride</name>
          </genericMedicine>
```

Validation Procedures

3.2.1.1 If the product item code is an NDC/NHRIC (i.e., if the root is "2.16.840.1.113883.6.69"), then the following procedures apply:

3.2.1.2 Code (NDC/NHRIC product code) has two segments separated by a hyphen

3.2.1.3 The first segment (NDC/NHRIC labeler code) is numeric.

3.2.1.4 Segments (NDC/NHRIC product codes) follow the pattern of 4-4, 5-4 or 5-3

3.2.1.5 The second segment (middle segment of three-segment NDC) is alpha-numeric (letters must be upper-case).

3.2.1.6 If the product item code is an ISBT 128 code (i.e., if the root is "2.16.840.1.113883.6.18"), then the following procedures apply:

3.2.1.7 Code contains two segments separated by a hyphen.

3.2.1.8 The first segment contains the ISBT 128 Facility Identification Number (FIN) beginning with a capital letter A-N, P-Z (i.e., all 26 letters except O) followed by 2 alphanumerics A-N, P-Z, 0-9, and 2 digits.

3.2.1.9 The second segment contains the ISBT 128 Product Code beginning with a capital letter (A-Z) followed by 4 digits (0-9) and optionally followed by 3 alphanumeric characters.

3.2.1.10 First segment (NDC/NHRIC labeler code) matches a Labeler Code associated with the Labeler id (labeler's DUNS Number) in a previously submitted NDC/NHRIC Labeler Code or NDC Labeler Code – Animal Drug SPL document, except for parts.

3.2.1.11 Code (NDC product code) has the same labeler segment as the NDC product/item code of all top-level products in this document, except under parts

3.2.1.12 Code (NDC product code) has the same length as all other NDC product/item codes with the same labeler segment in this document (i.e., all NDC product/item codes from one labeler have the same consistent length and hence all package item codes have the same consistent configuration.)

3.2.1.13 Code (NDC product code) has the same length as any other NDC product/item codes of the same labeler (i.e., all NDC product/item codes by the same labeler

have the same consistent length and hence all package item codes have the same consistent configuration.)

3.2.1.14 There is only one product data elements section for each NDC product/item code, i.e., the same product is not described more than once except under parts.

3.2.1.15 If the NDC product/item code is mentioned elsewhere in the document, then the product and generic name, dosage form, UNII and strength of all ingredients are the same.

3.2.1.16 There is a name, except if the document type is Indexing - Product Concept (73815-3).

3.2.1.17 Name contains no special symbols (e.g., no “®” or “™” etc) and no “USP” or dosage forms.

3.2.1.18 There is a form code (dosage form), except if the document is a Indexing - Product Concept (73815-3) or lot distribution data (66105-8), Indexing - Biologic or Drug Substance (77648-4) or REMS Document (82351-8) or Indexing – REMS (82353-4).

3.2.1.19 Form code (dosage form) has the code system 2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1

3.2.1.20 If the product has parts, then the form code is C47916 (for KIT)

3.2.1.21 Display name matches the code

3.2.1.22 There is a generic medicine (non-proprietary) name, except if the document is a Indexing - Product Concept or lot distribution data (66105-8) or Indexing - Biologic or Drug Substance (77648-4) or Indexing – REMS (82353-4).

3.2.1.23 Generic medicine (non-proprietary) name contains no special symbols (e.g., no “®” or “™” etc) and no “USP” or dosage forms.

3.2.1.24 Generic medicine (non-proprietary) name contains no suffix.

3.2.1.25 Generic medicine (non-proprietary) name contains no more than 512 characters.

3.2.1.26 If the NDC product/item code was previously submitted, then the product name is same as in the most recent submission for this NDC product/item code.

3.2.1.27 If the NDC product/item code was previously submitted, then the generic name is same as in the most recent submission for this NDC product/item code.

3.2.1.28 If the NDC product/item code was previously submitted, then the active ingredient UNII and active ingredient strength are the same as in the most recent submission for this NDC product/item code.

3.2.1.29 If the NDC product/item code was previously submitted, then the product dosage form is same as in the most recent submission for this NDC product/item code.

3.2.1.30 If the NDC product/item code was previously submitted, then the product characteristics of size are the same as in the most recent submission for this NDC product/item code.

3.2.1.31 If the NDC product/item code was previously submitted, then the product characteristics of shape are the same as in the most recent submission for this NDC product/item code.

3.2.1.32 If the NDC product/item code was previously submitted, then the product characteristics of color are same as in the most recent submission for this NDC product/item code.

3.2.1.33 If the NDC product/item code was previously submitted, then the product characteristics of imprintcode are the same as in the most recent submission for this NDC product/item code.

3.2.1.34 If the NDC product/item code was previously submitted, then the application number is the same as in the most recent submission for this NDC product/item code.

3.2.1.35 The dosage form code cannot be “not applicable” (C48624), for document types other than recombinant deoxyribonucleic acid construct (78745-7).

3.2.2 Product source

```
<asEquivalentEntity classCode="EQUIV">
  <code code="C64637" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"/>
  <definingMaterialKind>
     <code  code="source product item code"
            codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.69"/>
```

Validation Procedures

3.2.2.1 As equivalent entity class code, code and code system are as above

3.2.2.2 If there is a classCode, it is “EQUIV”.

3.2.2.3 Defining material kind code (source NDC product code) matches a NDC product/item code in a SPL file with a different set id

3.2.2.4 NDC product/item code for the source is not the same as the NDC product/item code for the product

3.2.3 Active ingredient

Active ingredients are specified as follows:

```
<ingredient classCode="ACTIM, ACTIB, or ACTIR">
  <quantity>
     <numerator value="10" unit="mg"/>
     <denominator value="1" unit="1"/>
  </quantity>

  <ingredientSubstance>
     <code code="1234567890" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.4.9"/>
     <name>tazminate malate</name>
```

The class code for active ingredient is dependent on the basis of the strength. If the basis of strength is the active ingredient, the class code is “ACTIB”. If the basis of strength is the active moiety, the class code is “ACTIM”. If the basis of strength is a reference drug, the class code is “ACTIR”. The strength is represented as a numerator and denominator. The UCUM code is used for the unit of measure. The UCUM code for a unit that is an “each” is “1” Examples of “each” is in the table below.

In most cases, the strength used is that for a single dose following the conventions in Table 5. In the table, an example of “mass” is milligrams, an example of “volume” is milliliter, an example of “time” is hour, and an example of “each” is tablet.

Table 5: Conventions for expressing strength

Product	Numerator unit	Denominator unit
Oral solid	Mass	Each
Oral liquid	Mass	Volume
Oral powder for reconstitution with a known volume	Mass	Volume
Oral powder for reconstitution with a variable volume	Mass	Each
Suppository	Mass	Each
Injection liquid	Mass	Volume
Injection powder for reconstitution with a known volume	Mass	Volume
Injection powder for reconstitution with a variable volume	Mass	Each
Inhaler powder	Mass	Each
Inhaler liquid	Volume	Each
Inhaler blister	Mass	Each
Topical cream or ointment	Mass	Mass

Product	Numerator unit	Denominator unit
Topical gel or lotion	Mass	Volume
Transdermal patch	Mass	Time
Bulk liquid	Mass	Volume
Bulk solid	Mass	Mass

Validation Procedures

3.2.3.1 Class code for active ingredients are ACTIB, ACTIM or ACTIR

3.2.3.2 If the document type is for ‘bulk ingredient’ (53409-9) with a marketing category of ‘bulk ingredient’ (C73626), then there is one and only one active ingredient.

3.2.3.3 If the product has no parts and is not a part, then there are one or more active ingredients except if the document is a Indexing - Product Concept (73815-3) or lot distribution data (66105-8), Indexing - Warning Letter Alert (77288-9), or REMS Document (82351-8) or Indexing – REMS (82353-4).

3.2.3.4 If the product has parts, then the active ingredients are under parts

3.2.3.5 There is a strength with a numerator and denominator, except if the document is a Indexing - Biologic or Drug Substance (77648-4).

3.2.3.6 If the document type is for ‘bulk ingredient’ (53409-9) with a marketing category of ‘bulk ingredient’ (C73626), then numerator and denominator (representing strength amount) are the same.

3.2.3.7 The strength numerator is based on mass (e.g., mg or g) and not volume (e.g. mL or L), except for ingredients such as water, alcohol, and gases.

3.2.4 Active moiety

```
<ingredient classCode="ACTIR">
      <ingredientSubstance>

<activeMoiety>
   <activeMoiety>
      <code code="0987654321" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.4.9"/>
      <name>tazminic acid</name>
```

Validation Procedures

3.2.4.1 There are one or two active moieties, except if the document is a Indexing - Biologic or Drug Substance (77648-4).

3.2.4.2 There is an active moiety code (UNII)

3.2.4.3 Code system is 2.16.840.1.113883.4.9

3.2.4.4 There is an active moiety name for each active moiety

3.2.4.5 If the active ingredient is in the active-ingredient-active-moiety-validation-list (see FDA SPL web page for list http://www.fda.gov/ForIndustry/DataStandards/StructuredProductLabeling/default.htm), then the active moiety and basis of strength is the corresponding active moiety and basis of strength respectively in this list, except if the document type is for bulk ingredient (53409-9) and Drug for Further Processing (78744-0).

3.2.4.6 If the active ingredient is not in the active-ingredient-active-moiety-validation-list (see FDA SPL web page for list http://www.fda.gov/ForIndustry/DataStandards/StructuredProductLabeling/default.htm), then the active moiety name does not include any of the names in the *active moiety validation* (counter ion) list (see FDA SPL web page for list http://www.fda.gov/ForIndustry/DataStandards/StructuredProductLabeling/default.htm), except if the word appears by itself optionally followed by “(ester)”, “cation” or “anion” or “ion”.

3.2.4.7 Active moiety name matches the code (UNII)

3.2.5 Reference Ingredient for Strength

```
<ingredient classCode=“ACTIR”>
  <ingredientSubstance>
     <asEquivalentSubstance>
        <definingSubstance>
           <code code="A123455678" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.4.9"/>
           <name>tazemate formate</name>
```

Validation Procedures

3.2.5.1 If the class code is ACTIR, then there is an asEquivalentSubstance element with a defining substance

3.2.5.2 If the class code is not ACTIR, then there is no asEquivalentSubstance element

3.2.5.3 There is a reference ingredient code

3.2.5.4 Code system is 2.16.840.1.113883.4.9

3.2.5.5 There is a name (preferred substance name)

3.2.5.6 The name matches the code (UNII)

3.2.5.7 If the document type code is 53404-0 (Vaccine Label) and if there is any active ingredient under the main product or under its first part, then at least one active ingredient code is on the list of active ingredients approved for vaccines.

3.2.6 Inactive ingredient

The inactive ingredient includes the inactive ingredient class code, ingredient name, identifier, and strength. The element <ingredient> is a child of <manufacturedProduct>. The class code for inactive ingredient is “IACT”. The strength, if needed, is represented as a numerator and denominator and is described using UCUM units of measure. If the inactive ingredient is confidential, the element<ingredient> includes <confidentialityCode code="B" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.25"/>.

```
<ingredient classCode="IACT">
  <confidentialityCode code="B" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.25"/>
  <quantity>
    <numerator value="value" unit="UCUM code"/>
    <denominator value="value" unit="UCUM code"/>
  </quantity>
  <ingredientSubstance>
    <code code="UNII" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.4.9"/>
    <name>inactive ingredient name</name>
  </ingredientSubstance>
</ingredient>
```

Validation Procedures

3.2.6.1 There are zero to many inactive ingredients.

3.2.6.2 If the document type is *human OTC drug label* (34390-5), then there is at least one inactive ingredient.

3.2.6.3 Class code is IACT

3.2.6.4 If the product has parts, then the inactive ingredients are under parts

3.2.6.5 If the document type is *human OTC drug label* (34390-5), then there is no confidentiality code.

3.2.6.6 There is no ingredient other than active ingredient (having class code ACTIM, ACTIR, ACTIB), inactive ingredient (having class code IACT), adjuvant (having class code ADJV), and those having class code CNTM, except if the document is a Human Compounded Drug Reporting (75031-5) or Animal Compounded Drug (77647-6).

3.2.7 Packaging

The format for packaging specification is:

```
<asContent>
   <quantity>
      <numerator value="100" unit="1"/>
      <denominator value="1"/>
   </quantity>

   <containerPackagedProduct>
      <code code="0001-0001-05" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.69"/>
      <formCode code="C43169"
                codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
                displayName="bottle"/>
```

Validation Procedures

3.2.7.1 Every top-level product has an “as content” (package information) element (optional for parts), except if the document is a Indexing - Product Concept (73815-3), lot distribution data (66105-8), Indexing - Warning Letter Alert (77288-9), Indexing - Biologic or Drug Substance (77648-4), REMS Document (82351-8) or Indexing – REMS (82353-4).

3.2.7.2 If outer package description has a production quantity characteristic, then document type is Human Compounded Drug (75031-5) or Animal Compounded Drug Label (77647-6) and the marketing category is C73627 (unapproved drug other).

3.2.7.3 If the document type is Human Compounded Drug Label (75031-5) or Animal Compounded Drug Label (77647-6) then each outer package description has a production quantity characteristic.

3.2.7.4 The outer package item code is not associated with another set id except under parts.

3.2.7.5 If the package item code has been previously submitted, then the package form code (package type) and quantity value and unit are the same as in the most recent submission for this package item code.

3.2.7.6 There are no drug package characteristics other than the ones mentioned in this document.

3.2.7.7 The package type code cannot be “not applicable” (C123723), for document types other than recombinant deoxyribonucleic acid construct (78745-7).

3.2.8 Parts

Products with one or more parts

```
<part>
   <quantity>
      <numerator value="1" unit="1"/>
      <denominator value="1"/>
   </quantity>
   <partProduct>
      <code code="0001-0001" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.69"/>
      <name>Tazmin <suffix>XR</suffix></name>
      <formCode code="C42916"
                codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
                displayName="capsule, extended release"/>
      <asEntityWithGeneric>
         <genericMedicine>
            <name>tazminate hydrochloride</name>
```

Validation Procedures

3.2.8.1 If the product form code is ‘C47916’ (KIT), then there is one or more parts

3.2.8.2 If the product has parts, then at least one part has one or more active ingredients.

3.2.8.3 Procedures for code, name, dosage form code, source, ingredients, characteristics and packaging are the same as for the main products (see 0ff)

3.2.9 Marketing Category

Example:

```
<subjectOf>
   <approval>
      <id extension="NDA123456" root="2.16.840.1.113883.3.150"/>
      <code  code="C73594"
             codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
             displayName="NDA"/>
      <author>
         <territorialAuthority>
            <territory>
               <code code="USA" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.28"/>
```

Validation Procedures

3.2.9.1 If the code is C80438 (Exempt device), C80440 (Humanitarian Device Exemption), C80441 (Premarket Application), or C80442 (Premarket Notification), then there is at least one part.

3.2.9.2 If the document type code is: 50577-6 (OTC animal drug), 50576-8 (OTC type A), 50574-3 (OTC type B), 50573-5 (OTC type C), 50578-4 (prescription animal drug), 50575-0 (VFD type A), 50572-7 (VFD type B) or 50571-9 (VFD type C), then the marketing category is: C73583 (ANADA), C73588 (Conditional NADA), C73593 (NADA), C92556 (legally marketed unapproved new animal drugs for minor species), C73614 (unapproved homeopathic), C73613 (unapproved medical gas) or C73627 (unapproved drug other).

3.2.9.3 If the marketing category is C73583 (ANADA), C73588 (Conditional NADA), C73593 (NADA), then the document type code is: 50577-6 (OTC animal drug), 50576-8 (OTC type A), 50574-3 (OTC type B), 50573-5 (OTC type C), 50578-4 (prescription animal drug), 50575-0 (VFD type A), 50572-7 (VFD type B), 50571-9 (VFD type C), or 78745-7 (Recombinant Deoxyribonucleic Acid Construct Label).

3.2.9.4 If the marketing category is C73626 (bulk ingredient), C96793 (bulk ingredient for human prescription compounding), or C98252 (bulk ingredient for animal drug compounding), then the document type is 53409-9 (bulk ingredient) or Drug for Further Processing (78744-0).

3.2.9.5 If the document type is 53409-9 (bulk ingredient) or Drug for Further Processing (78744-0), then the marketing category is C73626 (bulk ingredient), C94795 (drug for further processing), C96793 (bulk ingredient for human prescription compounding), C98252 (bulk ingredient for animal drug compounding), or C73590 (export only).

3.2.9.6 If the code is C73584 (ANDA), C73585 (BLA), or C73594 (NDA), then there exists a record of an application for the application number, except if the document is a Indexing - Product Concept (73815-3), Indexing - Warning Letter Alert (77288-9) or Indexing – REMS (82353-4).

3.2.9.7 If the code is C73584 (ANDA), C73585 (BLA), or C73594 (NDA) and the marketing is active with a start date on or before the current date, then there exists a record of an approved application for the application number.

3.2.9.8 If the code is C73584 (ANDA), C73585 (BLA), or C73594 (NDA) and the marketing status is completed, then there exists a record of an approved or withdrawn application for the application number.

3.2.9.9 If the marketing category is C95600 (Approved drug product manufactured exclusively for private label distributor), C95601 (OTC monograph drug product manufactured exclusively for private label distributor), C95602 (Unapproved drug product manufactured exclusively for private label

distributor), then the document type is 34391-3 (Human prescription drug label) or 34390-5 (Human OTC drug label)

3.2.9.10 If the marketing category is C86964 (Medical Food), then the document type is 58475-5 (Medical Food), except under parts.

3.2.9.11 If the document type is 58475-5 (Medical Food), then the marketing category is C86964 (Medical Food).

3.2.9.12 If the marketing category is C86952 (Dietary Supplement), then the document type is 58476-3 (Dietary Supplement), except under parts.

3.2.9.13 If the document type is 58476-3 (Dietary Supplement), then the marketing category is C86952 (Dietary Supplement).

3.2.9.14 If the document type is *Human prescription drug label* (34391-3), then the marketing category is not *OTC Monograph Final* (C73603), *OTC Monograph Not Final* (C73604), or *OTC Monograph Drug Product Manufactured Exclusively for Private Label Distributor* (C95601), except under parts.

3.2.9.15 If the document type is Drug for Further Processing (78744-0), then the marketing category is Drug for further processing (C94795.)

3.2.10 Marketing Status and Date

The procedures for marketing status and date (if any) are the same for all products and described in Section 3.1.8.

Validation Procedures

3.2.10.1 There is one marketing status code for each top-level product (part products do not need this), except if the document is a Indexing - Product Concept (73815-3) or lot distribution data (66105-8) or Indexing - Biologic or Drug Substance (77648-4) or Human Compounded Drug Reporting (75031-5) or Animal Compounded Drug Label (77647-6) or REMS Document (82351-8) or Indexing – REMS (82353-4).

3.2.11 DEA schedule

The DEA schedule, when applicable, is described under <policy> which is a child of <subjectOf> which is a child of <manufacturedProduct> as illustrated in the following example of a drug that is schedule II.

```
<subjectOf>
   <policy classCode="DEADrugSchedule">
```

```
      <code  code="C48675"
         codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
         displayName="CII"/>
```

Validation Procedures

3.2.11.1 If the product item code (NDC) is on the DEA Exempt Products List, then there is no DEA schedule.

3.2.11.2 If there is a DEA schedule, then the code system is 2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1

3.2.11.3 Display name matches the code

3.2.11.4 The policy element has a class code of 'DEADrugSchedule'.

3.2.11.5 If the product item code (NDC) is not on the DEA Exempt Products List, then the DEA Schedule matches the one in the Controlled Substance Table where all supplied constraints match.

3.2.12 Solid Oral Drug Product characteristics

Product characteristics include dosage form appearance. Dosage form characteristics are used to describe the appearance of the drug product and include the color, score, shape, size, imprint code and image. These are all under <subjectOf> which is a child of <manufacturedProduct>. Product characteristics also include product flavor and what the product contains.

```
<subjectOf>
  <characteristic classCode="OBS">
    <code code="SPLCOLOR" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.19255"/>
    <value code="code for color" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
           displayName="display name for color" xsi:type="CE">
      <originalText>optional original color description text</originalText>
    </value>
  </characteristic>
</subjectOf>

<subjectOf>
  <characteristic classCode="OBS">
    <code code="SPLSCORE" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.19255"/>
    <value value="value for score" xsi:type="INT"/>
  </characteristic>
</subjectOf>

<subjectOf>
  <characteristic classCode="OBS">
    <code code="SPLSHAPE" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.19255"/>
    <value code="code for shape" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
           displayName="display name for shape" xsi:type="CE">
      <originalText>optional original shape description text</originalText>
    </value>
  </characteristic>
</subjectOf>
```

```
<subjectOf>
  <characteristic classCode="OBS">
    <code code="SPLSIZE" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.19255"/>
    <value unit="mm" value="value for size in mm" xsi:type="PQ"/>
  </characteristic>
</subjectOf>

<subjectOf>
  <characteristic classCode="OBS">
    <code code="SPLIMPRINT" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.19255"/>
    <value xsi:type="ST">imprint separated by semicolon</value>
  </characteristic>
</subjectOf>

<subjectOf>
  <characteristic classCode="OBS">
    <code code="SPLFLAVOR" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.19255"/>
    <value code="code for flavor" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
           displayName="display name for flavor" xsi:type="CE">
      <originalText>optional flavor description text</originalText>
    </value>
  </characteristic>
</subjectOf>

<subjectOf>
  <characteristic classCode="OBS">
    <code code="SPLIMAGE" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.19255"/>
    <value xsi:type="ED" mediaType="image/jpeg">
      <reference value="file name.jpg"/>
    </value>
  </characteristic>
</subjectOf>
```

3.2.13 Color

```
<subjectOf>
   <characteristic>

      <code code="SPLCOLOR" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.19255"/>
      <value code="C48333"
             codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
             displayName="blue" xsi:type="CE">
         <originalText>LIGHT BLUE</originalText>
```

Validation Procedures

3.2.13.1 If the dosage form is on the *solid oral dosage form* list (see FDA SPL web page for list http://www.fda.gov/ForIndustry/DataStandards/StructuredProductLabeling/default.htm), then there is a color.

3.2.13.2 Code and code system is as above (for SPLCOLOR)

3.2.13.3 Value code system is 2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1

3.2.13.4 Display name matches the value code

3.2.14 Shape

```
<subjectOf>
   <characteristic>
      <code code="SPLSHAPE" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.19255"/>
      <value code="C48336"
             codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
             displayName="capsule" xsi:type="CE"/>
          <originalText>capsule like</originalText>
```

Validation Procedures

3.2.14.1 If the dosage form is on the *solid oral dosage form* list (see FDA SPL web page for list http://www.fda.gov/ForIndustry/DataStandards/StructuredProductLabeling/default.htm), then there is a shape

3.2.14.2 Code and code system is as above (for SPLSHAPE)

3.2.14.3 Value code system is 2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1

3.2.14.4 Display name matches the value code

3.2.14.5 There is only one shape element

3.2.15 Size

```
<subjectOf>
   <characteristic>
      <code code="SPLSIZE" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.19255"/>
      <value unit="mm" value="18" xsi:type="PQ"/>
```

Validation Procedures

3.2.15.1 If the dosage form is on the *solid oral dosage form* list (see FDA SPL web page for list http://www.fda.gov/ForIndustry/DataStandards/StructuredProductLabeling/default.htm), then there is a size

3.2.15.2 Code and code system is as above (for SPLSIZE)

3.2.15.3 There is a unit and value for size element

3.2.15.4 Value units is mm for size element

3.2.15.5 Value is a whole number greater than zero for size element

3.2.15.6 There is only one size element

3.2.16 Scoring

```
<subjectOf>
   <characteristic>
      <code code="SPLSCORE" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.19255"/>
      <value value="1" xsi:type="INT"/>
```

Validation Procedures

3.2.16.1 If the dosage form is on the *solid oral dosage form* list (see FDA SPL web page for list http://www.fda.gov/ForIndustry/DataStandards/StructuredProductLabeling/default.htm), then there is scoring

3.2.16.2 Code and code system is as above (for SPLSCORE)

3.2.16.3 The value is 1, 2, 3, 4 or nullFlavor=”OTH” (for SPLSCORE)

```
   <characteristic>
      <code code="SPLSCORE" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.19255"/>
      <value nullFlavor=“OTH” xsi:type="INT"/>
```

3.2.16.4 There is only one score element

3.2.17 Imprint code

```
<subjectOf>
   <characteristic>
      <code code="SPLIMPRINT" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.19255"/>
      <value xsi:type="ST">05</value>
```

Validation Procedures

3.2.17.1 Code and code system is as above (for SPLIMPRINT)

3.2.17.2 Value has only letters and numbers separated by semicolon without spaces (for SPLIMPRINT)

3.2.17.3 There is only one imprint code element

3.2.18 Flavor

```
<subjectOf>
   <characteristic>
      <code code="SPLFLAVOR" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.19255"/>
      <value code="C73391"
             codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
             displayName="grape" xsi:type="CE">
         <originalText>wild grape</originalText>
```

Validation Procedures

3.2.18.1 If there is a flavor, then code and code system is as above

3.2.18.2 Value code system is 2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1

3.2.18.3 Display name matches the value code

3.2.19 Image

```
<subjectOf>
   <characteristic>
      <code code="SPLIMAGE" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.19255"/>
      <value xsi:type="ED" mediaType="image/jpeg">
         <reference value="8837a946-1912-4c1f-8035-e313fdd11ef2.jpg"/>
```

Validation Procedures

3.2.19.1 If there is SPL image, then code and code system are as above

3.2.19.2 Value xsi:type is as above

3.2.19.3 mediaType is “image/jpeg”

3.2.19.4 Reference value is the file name for a valid image

3.2.19.5 The image file is submitted together with the SPL file.

3.2.19.6 There are no product characteristics other than the ones mentioned above.

3.2.20 Route of administration

Route of administration may be specified for products

```
<subject>
   <manufacturedProduct>
      <consumedIn/>
```

and their parts:

```
<part>
  <consumedIn/>
```

Route of administration is specified as follows:

```
<consumedIn>
  <substanceAdministration>
    <routeCode code="C38288"
               codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
               displayName="oral"/>
```

Validation Procedures

3.2.20.1 If the document type is not for 'bulk ingredient' (53409-9), licensed vaccine bulk intermediate (53406-5) or drug for further processing (78744-0) and product is not a top-level product whose form code is C47916, then there is one or more "consumed in" (route of administration) substance administration with route code, except if the document is a Indexing - Product Concept (73815-3) or lot distribution data (66105-8) or Indexing - Biologic or Drug Substance (77648-4) or REMS Document (82351-8) or Indexing – REMS (82353-4).

3.2.20.2 Route code system is 2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1

3.2.20.3 There is a display name that matches the code

3.2.20.4 If the document type is for 'bulk ingredient' (53409-9), licensed vaccine bulk intermediate (53406-5) or drug for further processing (78744-0) then route code is "not applicable" or not present at all.

```
      <routeCode nullFlavor="NA"/>
```

3.2.20.5 The route (of administration) code cannot be "not applicable" (C48623) for document types other than bulk ingredient (53409-9), licensed vaccine bulk intermediate (53406-5) , recombinant deoxyribonucleic acid construct label (78745-7), or drug for further processing (78744-0).

3.3 Device Product

```
<manufacturedProduct>
  <code code="91234561234569" codeSystem="1.3.160"/>

    <name>SuperTape 2000</name>
    <desc>Adhesive tape for orthopedic use.</desc>

    <asSpecializedKind classCode="GEN">
      <generalizedMaterialKind>
        <code code="MCA" displayName="Tape, Surgical, Internal"
              codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.303"/>
      </generalizedMaterialKind>
    </asSpecializedKind>
```

Device products are those products with the appropriate marketing categories listed in Table 1.

3.3.1 Item Code and Name

Validation Procedures

3.3.1.1 There may be an NDC product/item code

3.3.1.2 If there is a NDC product/item code, the following general procedures apply:

3.3.1.3 Code system is 2.16.840.1.113883.6.69 (NHRIC), 1.3.160 (GS1), or 2.16.840.1.113883.6.40 (HIBCC).

3.3.1.4 Code is compliant with the code system's allocation rules.

3.3.1.5 There is a name, i.e., the trade or proprietary name of the medical device as used in product labeling or in the catalog

3.3.1.6 Markings such as ®, or ™ should not be included

3.3.1.7 There is a device type (asSpecializedKind element) with a code.

3.3.1.8 code system is 2.16.840.1.113883.6.303 for FDA Product Classification System

3.3.1.9 there is a valid medical device product classification code

3.3.1.10 there is a displayName which matches the code

3.3.2 Additional Device Identifiers

```
<document>
  <section>
     <subject>
        <manufacturedProduct>
          <manufacturedProduct>
             <asIdentifiedEntity classCode="IDENT">
               <id extension="ST2000/A" root="1.2.3.99.1"/>
               <code code="C99286" displayName="model number"
                     codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"/>
             </asIdentifiedEntity>
```

These additional identifiers may also appear under device parts:

```
<part>
   <partProduct>
      <asIdentifiedEntity>
```

3.3.2.1 There may be one or more additional identifiers, including model number (C99286), catalog number (C99285), and reference number (C99287).

3.3.2.2 There is a code with code system 2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1.

3.3.2.3 Code is from the identifier type list

Table 6:Additional Identifier Types

Identifier Type	Code	Description
Model Number	C99286	the exact model number found on the device label or accompanying packaging.
Catalog Number	C99285	the exact number as it appears in the manufacturer's catalog, device labeling, or accompanying packaging
Reference Number	C99287	any secondary product identifier

3.3.2.4 There is one id

3.3.2.5 Id has a root OID

3.3.2.6 The actual identifier is in the extension.

3.3.2.7 There is at most one Model Number reference (C99286)

3.3.2.8 The id root can be any root OID over which the labeler has authority. If the labeler has no such root OID of its own, then the root is constructed by concatenating the DUNS number (without leading zeroes) to the fixed string “1.3.6.1.4.1.32366.3.”

3.3.2.9 There is at most one Catalog Number (C99285)

3.3.2.10 The id root can be any root OID over which the labeler has authority. If the labeler has no such root OID of its own, then the root is constructed by concatenating the DUNS number (without leading zeroes) to the fixed string “1.3.6.1.4.1.32366.3.”

3.3.2.11 The product may have multiple reference numbers (i.e., secondary identifiers, C99287).

3.3.2.12 The id root is 2.16.840.1.113883.6.69 (NHRIC), 1.3.160 (GS1), 2.16.840.1.113883.6.40 (HIBCC), or may be constructed by concatenating the DUNS number (without leading zeroes) to the fixed string “1.3.6.1.4.1.32366.3.”

3.3.2.13 Id extension is compliant with the code system’s allocation rules.

3.3.3 Device Ingredient

Ingredients included in devices that are not identified as active ingredients include the ingredient class code, ingredient name, identifier, and strength. The element <ingredient> is a child of <manufacturedProduct>. The class code for ingredient is "INGR". The strength, if needed, is represented as a numerator and denominator and is described using UCUM units of measure.

```
<ingredient classCode="INGR">
  <quantity>
    <numerator value="value" unit="UCUM code"/>
    <denominator value="value" unit="UCUM code"/>
  </quantity>
  <ingredientSubstance>
    <code code="UNII" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.4.9"/>
    <name>ingredient name</name>
  </ingredientSubstance>
</ingredient>
```

This structure is also used to indicate that a product contains latex (UNII code for latex).

Note that devices may have active ingredients as well, such as in a medicated stent, i.e., where the device serves in part the function of releasing a built-in drug. This is to be distinguished from devices such as syringes which are delivery devices for a drug product that they contain.

3.3.4 Device Parts

Device parts may be specified for the product in the same way as for other product kits (see Section 3.1.6 Kits, Parts, Components and Accessories above),

```
<partProduct>
   <code code="91234561234569" codeSystem="1.3.160"/>
   <name>SuperTape 2000</name>
   <asSpecializedKind classCode="GEN">
      <generalizedMaterialKind>
         <code code="MCA"
               codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.303"/>
         </generalizedMaterialKind>
      </asSpecializedKind>
```

Validation Procedures

3.3.4.1 There is a name, i.e., the trade or proprietary name of the medical device as used in product labeling or in the catalog

3.3.4.2 Markings such as ®, or ™ should not be included

3.3.5 Part of Assembly

When products are used together but packaged separately, the data element <asPartOfAssembly> is used to identify the other product. The products could be drugs or devices.

```
<asPartOfAssembly>
  <wholeProduct><!-- this is the assembly, but has no identifier -->
    <part>
      <partProduct>
        <code code="item code of accessory component"
              codeSystem="code system OID"/>
```

3.3.6 Regulatory Identifiers

Regulatory identifiers, marketing status and characteristics are all connected through the <subjectOf> element which may appear on the main product:

```
<subject>
   <manufacturedProduct>
      <manufacturedProduct/>
      <subjectOf/>
```

The regulatory identifier:

```
<subjectOf>
   <approval>
      <id extension="K123456" root="2.16.840.1.113883.3.150"/>
      <code  code="C80442"
             codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
             displayName="Premarket Notification"/>
      <author>
         <territorialAuthority>
            <territory>
               <code code="USA" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.28"/>
```

Validation Procedures

3.3.6.1 There is one regulatory identifier for each product

3.3.6.2 Code comes from Table 1 for product type “device”.

3.3.6.3 Display name matches the code

3.3.6.4 Code system is 2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1

3.3.6.5 If the code is PMA (C80441), 510(k) (C80442), Exempt device (C80438), or Humanitarian Device Exemption (C80440), then the id root is 2.16.840.1.113883.3.150.

3.3.6.6 If the code is C80441 (Premarket Application), then the id extension has a prefix “P” or “BP” followed by 6 digits

3.3.6.7 If the code is C80442 (Premarket Notification), then the id extension has a prefix “K” or “BK” followed by 6 digits.

3.3.6.8 If the code is C80438 (Exempt device), then the id extension consists of 3 letters

3.3.6.9 If the code is C80440 (Humanitarian Device Exemption), then the id extension has a prefix “H” followed by 6 digits

3.3.6.10 Territorial authority is as above

3.3.7 Marketing status and date

The procedures for marketing status and date (if any) are the same for all products and described in Section 3.1.8.

Validation Procedures

3.3.7.1 There is one marketing status code for each top-level product (part products do not need this)

3.3.8 Device Characteristics

Many characteristics exist for devices and are listed here in tabular form. The characteristic structure allows specifying any properties of the product in a code-value pair, the code saying which property is being specified, the value saying what the property is for the given product. The characteristics structure connects to the product Role through the subjectOf element.

```
<manufacturedProduct>
  <manufacturedProduct>
      ...
  </manufacturedProduct>
  <subjectOf>
    <characteristic>
      <code code="characteristic code"
            codeSystem="characteristic code system"/>
      <value xsi:type="characteristic value type" ...>
```

Characteristics listed in Table 7 use one of a number of different data types. Each data type uses slightly different XML elements and attributes as shown in the templates in Section 3.1.9 Characteristics3.1.9.

Table 7: Characteristic codes and code systems.

Name	Code / Code System OID	Data Type	Description
Number of times useable.	SPLUSE 2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.19255	INT	Specifies how often a product may be re-used. While a number could be specified, the common distinction is between single disposable and multiple use products. A product that has unlimited reuses uses the <value nullFlavor="PINF" xsi:type="INT"/>.
Sterile Use	SPLSTERILEUSE 2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.19255	BL	Specifies whether the device is intended or not intended to be used where sterile conditions are necessary (e.g., pens).
MRI Safety	SPLMRISAFE 2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.19255	BL	Yes (MRI Safe), No (MRI unsafe)

Validation Procedures

3.3.8.1 There are no device characteristics other than the ones mentioned in this document.

3.3.9 Reusability

```
<subjectOf>
   <characteristic>
      <code code="SPLUSE" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.19255"/>
      <value value="1" xsi:type="INT"/>
```

Unlimited reusability is represented as follows:

```
<subjectOf>
   <characteristic>
      <code code="SPLUSE" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.19255"/>
      <value nullFlavor="PINF" xsi:type="INT"/>.
```

Validation Procedures

3.3.9.1 Code and code system is as above

3.3.9.2 The value is an integer number greater or equal 1 (1 meaning single use, and number greater than 1 meaning reusable up to this many times) or there is nullFlavor "PINF" and no value.

3.3.9.3 There is only one reusability element

3.3.10 Sterile Use

```
<subjectOf>
   <characteristic>
      <code code="SPLSTERILEUSE"
            codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.19255"/>
      <value xsi:type="BL" value="true"/>
```

Validation Procedures

3.3.10.1 Code and code system are as above

3.3.10.2 Value type is “BL” (Boolean)

3.3.10.3 Value is “true” or “false”

3.4 Cosmetic Product

```
<manufacturedProduct>
  <code code="91234561234569" codeSystem="1.3.160"/>
    <name>Juvenia Soft</name>
    <asSpecializedKind classCode="GEN">
      <generalizedMaterialKind>
        <code code="01B" displayName="lotions, oils, powders, and creams"
              codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.303"/>
      </generalizedMaterialKind>
    </asSpecializedKind>
```

Cosmetic products are those products with marketing category C86965 (cosmetic).

3.4.1 Item Code and Name

Validation Procedures

3.4.1.1 There is a name, i.e., the trade or proprietary name of the cosmetic as used in product labeling or in the catalog

3.4.1.2 Markings such as ®, or ™ should not be included

3.4.1.3 There is a cosmetic type (asSpecializedKind element) with a code.

3.4.1.4 code system is 2.16.840.1.113883.6.303 for FDA Product Classification System

3.4.1.5 there is a valid cosmetic product classification code

3.4.1.6 there is a displayName which matches the code

3.4.2 Cosmetic Ingredient

Cosmetic ingredients use the class code INGR. The ingredients are included in decending order of predominant weight as in the label.

```
<ingredient classCode="INGR">
  <ingredientSubstance>
    <code code="UNII" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.4.9"/>
    <name>ingredient name</name>
  </ingredientSubstance>
</ingredient>
```

Validation Procedures

3.4.2.1 Class code for cosmetic ingredients is INGR

3.4.2.2 If the product has no parts and is not a part, then there are one or more ingredients.

3.4.2.3 If the product has parts, then the ingredients are under parts

3.4.3 Cosmetic Parts

Cosmetic parts may be specified for the product in the same way as for other product kits (see Section 3.1.6 Kits, Parts, Components and Accessories above),

```
<partProduct>
   <code code="91234561234569" codeSystem="1.3.160"/>
   <name>Juvenia Soft</name>
   <asSpecializedKind classCode="GEN">
      <generalizedMaterialKind>
         <code code="MCA"
               codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.303"/>
         </generalizedMaterialKind>
      </asSpecializedKind>
```

Validation Procedures

3.4.3.1 There is a name, i.e., the trade or proprietary name of the cosmetic as used in product labeling or in the catalog

3.4.3.2 Markings such as ®, or ™ should not be included

3.4.4 Marketing status and date

The procedures for marketing status and date (if any) are the same for all products and described in Section 3.1.8.

Validation Procedures

3.4.4.1 There is one marketing status code for each top-level product (part products do not need this)

3.5 Summary of Product Data Elements

This concludes the specific data elements recognized about various types of products. The following sections describe specific business processes which may or may not contain the above product data element structures.

4 Drug Labeling, Listing, and other Drug Product Submissions

Drug labeling provides a description of the product and information for its use. Drug listing links registered establishments to specific products.

4.1 Header

4.1.1 Document Type

4.1.1.1 Document types for labeling and listing are in the following Table 10. Some validation procedures vary by what FDA Center has authority over the types of products submitted with the respective document.

Table 8: Document Types for Labeling , Listing, and other Product Submissions

Code	Display Name	FDA Center
53409-9	BULK INGREDIENT	CDER
60684-8	CELLULAR THERAPY	CBER
34390-5	HUMAN OTC DRUG LABEL	CDER
34391-3	HUMAN PRESCRIPTION DRUG LABEL	CDER
75031-5	Human Compounded Drug Label	CDER
53407-3	LICENSE BLOOD INTERMEDIATES/PASTE LABEL	CBER
53408-1	LICENSED MINIMALLY MANIPULATED CELLS LABEL	CBER
53406-5	LICENSED VACCINE BULK INTERMEDIATE LABEL	CBER
55439-4	MEDICAL DEVICE	CDRH
58475-5	MEDICAL FOOD<	CFSAN
53405-7	NON-STANDARDIZED ALLERGENIC LABEL	CBER
50577-6	OTC ANIMAL DRUG LABEL	CVM
69403-4	OTC MEDICAL DEVICE LABEL	CDRH
50576-8	OTC TYPE A MEDICATED ARTICLE ANIMAL DRUG LABEL	CVM
50574-3	OTC TYPE B MEDICATED FEED ANIMAL DRUG LABEL	CVM
50573-5	OTC TYPE C MEDICATED FEED ANIMAL DRUG LABEL	CVM
60683-0	PLASMA DERIVATIVE	CBER
50578-4	PRESCRIPTION ANIMAL DRUG LABEL	CVM
69404-2	PRESCRIPTION MEDICAL DEVICE LABEL	CDRH
60682-2	STANDARDIZED ALLERGENIC	CBER
53404-0	VACCINE LABEL	CBER
50575-0	VFD TYPE A MEDICATED ARTICLE ANIMAL DRUG LABEL	CVM
50572-7	VFD TYPE B MEDICATED FEED ANIMAL DRUG LABEL	CVM
50571-9	VFD TYPE C MEDICATED FEED ANIMAL DRUG LABEL	CVM

Code	Display Name	FDA Center
78745-7	Recombinant Deoxyribonucleic Acid Construct	CVM
77647-6	Animal Compounded Drug	CVM
78744-0	Drug for Further Processing	CDER

4.1.1.2 If a document with the same set id has been previously submitted, then it is of the same type, except if the previous document type was Bulk Ingredient (53409-9) and the present document type is Drug for Further Processing (78744-0).

4.1.1.3 If active ingredient code is on the list of active ingredients approved for vaccines, then the document type code is 53404-0 (Vaccine Label) or licensed vaccine bulk intermediate (53406-5).

4.1.1.4 If the product type “changes” from Human Prescription Drug (34391-3) to Human OTC Drug (34390-5), then submit a new listing file with new NDC codes for the OTC drug.

4.1.2 Labeler information

```
<document>
   <code  code="..." codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
          displayName="..."/>

<author>

<assignedEntity>
  <representedOrganization>
    <id extension="100000007" root="1.3.6.1.4.1.519.1"/>
    <name>Acme drug company</name>
```

Validation Procedures

4.1.2.1 There is one labeler

4.1.2.2 There is one id, the labeler’s DUNS number, and name is as in Section 2.1.5.

4.1.2.3 The set id is not associated with any top level product with a different NDC Labeler Prefix

4.1.2.4 There is no other element besides id (the labeler’s DUNS Number), name and registrant.

4.1.3 Registrant information

```
<document>
  <author>
    <assignedEntity>
      <representedOrganization>
```

```
<assignedEntity>
  <confidentialityCode code="B" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.25"/>
  <assignedOrganization>
    <id extension="100000008" root="1.3.6.1.4.1.519.1"/>
    <name>Acme drug company</name>
```

Validation Procedures

4.1.3.1 There may be registrant information

4.1.3.2 If there is a registrant, then there is one id, (the registrants DUNS number) and a name as in Section 2.1.5.

4.1.3.3 There is no other element besides registrant's id, registrant's name and establishments.

4.1.3.4 There is not more than one registrant element.

4.1.4 Establishment information

```
<document>
   <author>
      <assignedEntity>
         <representedOrganization> <!-- Labeler -->
            <assignedEntity>
               <assignedOrganization> <!-- Registrant -->

<assignedEntity>
   <confidentialityCode code="B" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.25"/>
   <assignedOrganization>  <!-- Establishment -->
      <id extension="1000000019" root="1.3.6.1.4.1.519.1"/>
      <name>Middleton Manufacturing company</name>
   </assignedOrganization>
   <performance>
      <actDefinition>
         <code  code="C43360"
                codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
                displayName="manufacture"/>
```

Validation Procedures

4.1.4.1 If the marketing status code for any of the products that is or includes a drug is **not** *completed*, then there are one or more establishments.

4.1.4.2 There is one id (the DUNS number) and name is as in Section 2.1.5.

4.1.4.3 id is not used for other establishments in the file

4.1.4.4 Establishment ("assignedOrganization") has no other element besides id (the DUNS Number) and name.

4.1.4.5 The establishment id matches an establishment with same id (the DUNS Number) submitted in documents of type “establishment registration” in the same or previous calendar year

4.1.4.6 There are one or more business operations.

4.1.4.7 Act definition display business operation name matches corresponding business operation code

4.1.4.8 The code comes from the business operations list except for import (C73599) and united states agent (C73330) and distributes drug products under own private label (C73608)

4.1.4.9 Act definition code (business operation code) matches business operation code for an establishment with same id previously submitted in documents of type “establishment registration” in the same or previous calendar year

4.1.4.10 If any of the products without a marketing completion date in a Prescription Animal Drug (50578-4), OTC Animal Drug (50577-6) or Animal Medicated Article or Medicated Feed (50576-8, 50574-3, 50573-5, 50575-0, 50572-7, 50571-9) listing has establishments with operations of manufacture (C43360) and also relabel (C73607), or repack (C73606), then there is no product source.

4.1.4.11 If the document type is Human Compounded Drug Label (75031-5), then the establishment’s business operation is Human drug compounding outsourcing facility (C112113).

4.1.4.12 If the document type is Animal Compounded Drug Label (77647-6), then the establishment’s business operation is Outsourcing Animal Drug Compounding (C122061).

4.1.4.13 If the product has a reference source, then one of the operations is Repack (C73606) or Relabel (C73607).

4.1.4.14 If in a Bulk Ingredient (53409-9) listing there is a product with marketing category Bulk Ingredient (C73626) and without a marketing completion date, then one or more establishments with operation of API manufacture (C82401) are included.

4.1.4.15 If there is any product that is or includes a drug and has no marketing completion date and no product source, then at least one establishment with a manufacture operation is included such as API manufacture (C82401), manufacture (C43360), or positron emission tomography drug production (C91403).

4.1.4.16 If in a Prescription Animal Drug (50578-4), OTC Animal Drug (50577-6) or Animal Medicated Article or Medicated Feed (50576-8, 50574-3, 50573-5, 50575-0, 50572-7, 50571-9) listing there is a product without a marketing completion date, with an active ingredient other than those in the designated medical gas validation list, and without product source, then one or more establishments with operation of API manufacture (C82401) are included.

4.1.4.17 Compounded Drug Report has only one Establishment

4.1.4.18 DUNS number is not associated with any other set id for Compounded Drug report.

4.1.5 Business Operation Product

The following example shows how the business operations are specified for particular products. It is done by replicating the business operation (actDefinition) elements, and connecting each with one product as shown below:

```
<document>
  <author>
    <assignedEntity><representedOrganization>      <!-- Labeler -->
       <assignedEntity><assignedOrganization>      <!-- Registrant -->
          <assignedEntity><assignedOrganization/>  <!-- Establishment -->

<performance><actDefinition>
  <code code="C43360" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
        displayName="manufacture"/>

  <product><manufacturedProduct classCode=“MANU”><manufacturedMaterialKind>
    <code code="0123-12345" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.69"/>
  </manufacturedMaterialKind></manufacturedProduct></product>
</actDefinition></performance>

<performance><actDefinition>
  <code code="C43360" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
        displayName="manufacture"/>
  <product><manufacturedProduct classCode=“MANU”><manufacturedMaterialKind>
    <code code="0123-12348" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.69"/>
```

Validation Procedures

4.1.5.1 If the product is regulated by CDER, then an establishment operation listed is linked to at least one listed product or part product, except for Human Compounded Drug Label (75031-5).

4.1.5.2 If the product is regulated by CDER, then each listed product having an active marketing status is linked from at least one establishment operation, except for Human Compounded Drug Label (75031-5).

4.1.5.3 If the product is regulated by CDRH, CFSAN, or CVM or if it is a Human Compounded Drug (75031-5) or Animal Compounded Drug (77647-6), then

there is no operation-product link. (NDC product code-to-establishment-business operation data relationship)

4.1.5.4 If the product is regulated by CBER, then the operation-product link is optional. (NDC product code-to-establishment-business-operation data relationship)

4.2 Body

4.2.1 Required Sections

Validation Procedures

4.2.1.1 The document body contains one or more sections

4.2.1.2 One section contains the product data elements

4.2.1.3 With the exception of inner components of kits, for each product there is a representative sample image of a carton/container label in a major SPL section with section heading "Package.Label Principal Display Panel" (51945-4), except for Positron Emission Tomography drug products (files with only one establishment and this establishment having business operation 'C91403') and Non-Standardized Allergenic Extracts, Animal Compounded Drug (77647-6), and Human Compounded Drug (75031-5).

4.2.1.4 If the document type is Non-Standardized Allergenic, then there is at least one carton/container label in a major SPL section with section heading "Package.Label Principal Display Panel" (51945-4) in the SPL file.

4.2.1.5 If the document type is *Human Prescription Drug Label* (34391-3) or *Prescription Animal Drug Label* (50578-4), then there is at least one other content of labeling section besides those with the codes 48780-1 and 51945-4, except if there is no marketing category code other than C73626 (bulk ingredient), C94795 (drug for further processing), C73613 (unapproved medical gas), C95600 (approved drug product manufactured exclusively for private label distributor), C95601 (OTC monograph drug product manufactured exclusively for private label distributor), C95602 (unapproved drug product manufactured exclusively for private label distributor), C96793 (bulk ingredient for human prescription compounding), C98252 (bulk ingredient for animal drug compounding) or C73590 (export only), or there is no active ingredient other than those in the designated medical gas validation list.

4.2.1.6 If the approval number is in the medication guide validation list and the marketing category is not C95600 (Approved drug product manufactured

exclusively for private label distributor), then there is such a Medication Guide section (42231-1).

4.2.1.7 If the document type is 34390-5 (Human OTC drug label) and the marketing category code is not C95600 (approved drug product manufactured exclusively for private label distributor), C95601 (OTC monograph drug product manufactured exclusively for private label distributor), C95602 (Unapproved drug product manufactured exclusively for a private label distributor) or C73590 (export only) and the citation is not part352 (sunscreens), then there is an OTC- active ingredient section (55106-9).

4.2.1.8 If the document type is 34390-5 (Human OTC drug label) and the marketing category code is not C95600 (approved drug product manufactured exclusively for private label distributor), C95601 (OTC monograph drug product manufactured exclusively for private label distributor), C95602 (Unapproved drug product manufactured exclusively for a private label distributor) or C73590 (export only) and the citation is not part352 (sunscreens), then there is an OTC – Purpose section (55105-1).

4.2.1.9 If the document type is 34390-5 (Human OTC drug label) and the marketing category code is not C95600 (approved drug product manufactured exclusively for private label distributor), C95601 (OTC monograph drug product manufactured exclusively for private label distributor), C95602 (Unapproved drug product manufactured exclusively for a private label distributor) or C73590 (export only) and the citation is not part352 (sunscreens), then there is an OTC – keep out of reach of children section (50565-1).

4.2.1.10 If the document type is 34390-5 (Human OTC drug label) and the marketing category code is not C95600 (approved drug product manufactured exclusively for private label distributor), C95601 (OTC monograph drug product manufactured exclusively for private label distributor), C95602 (Unapproved drug product manufactured exclusively for a private label distributor) or C73590 (export only) and the citation is not part352 (sunscreens), then there is an Indications & usage section (34067-9).

4.2.1.11 If the document type is 34390-5 (Human OTC drug label) and the marketing category code is not C95600 (approved drug product manufactured exclusively for private label distributor), C95601 (OTC monograph drug product manufactured exclusively for private label distributor), C95602 (Unapproved drug product manufactured exclusively for a private label distributor) or C73590 (export only) and the citation is not part352 (sunscreens), then there is a Warnings section (34071-1).

4.2.1.12 If the document type is 34390-5 (Human OTC drug label) and the marketing category code is not C95600 (approved drug product manufactured exclusively

for private label distributor), C95601 (OTC monograph drug product manufactured exclusively for private label distributor), C95602 (Unapproved drug product manufactured exclusively for a private label distributor) or C73590 (export only) and the citation is not part352 (sunscreens), then there is a Dosage & administration section (34068-7).

4.2.1.13 If the document type is 34390-5 (Human OTC drug label) and the marketing category code is not C95600 (approved drug product manufactured exclusively for private label distributor), C95601 (OTC monograph drug product manufactured exclusively for private label distributor), C95602 (Unapproved drug product manufactured exclusively for a private label distributor) or C73590 (export only) and the citation is not part352 (sunscreens), then there is an Inactive ingredient section (51727-6).

4.2.1.14 If the marketing category is “unapproved drug for use in drug shortage” (C101533), the Health Care Provider Letter Section (71744-7) is present.

4.2.1.15 *Carton/container label section(s)* (51945-4) are the last section(s) in the document.

4.2.2 Reporting Period (for certain submissions)

For certain drug product submission files (currently Human Compounded Drug Label), a reporting period is provided as follows:

```
<component>
  <section>
    <id root="e13a985b-f706-a5c8-e8ef-73891eb1c697"/>
    <code code="48780-1"
          codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
          displayName="SPL product data elements section"/>
      <effectiveTime>
        <low value="20150601"/>
        <high value="20151130" closed="false"/>
      </effectiveTime>
```

Validation Procedures

4.2.2.1 If the document type is Human Compounded Drug Label (75031-5) or Animal Compounded Drug Label (77647-6), then the product data element section’s effective time contains the reporting period.

4.2.2.2 If the document type is Human Compounded Drug Label (75031-5) or Animal Compounded Drug Label (77647-6), then reporting period (effective time) has low and high boundaries for reporting period start and end date respectively.

4.2.2.3 If the document type is Human Compounded Drug Label (75031-5) or Animal Compounded Drug Label (77647-6), then reporting start date has at least the precision of day in the format YYYYMMDD

4.2.2.4 If the document type is Human Compounded Drug Label (75031-5) or Animal Compounded Drug Label (77647-6), then reporting end date has at least the precision of day in the format YYYYMMDD

4.2.2.5 If the document type is Human Compounded Drug Label (75031-5) or Animal Compounded Drug Label (77647-6), then reporting start date is before reporting end date.

4.2.2.6 If the document type is Human Compounded Drug Label (75031-5) or Animal Compounded Drug Label (77647-6), then reporting period start date (low value) is any day of any year between 2014 to current year.

4.2.2.7 If the document type is Human Compounded Drug Label (75031-5) or Animal Compounded Drug Label (77647-6) and the reporting period start date (low value) is December 1, then the end date (high value) is May 31 of the following year.

4.2.2.8 If the document type is Human Compounded Drug Label (75031-5) or Animal Compounded Drug Label (77647-6) and the reporting period start date (low value) is June 1, then the end date (high value) is November 30 of the same year.

4.2.2.9 If the document type is Human Compounded Drug Label (75031-5) or Animal Compounded Drug Label (77647-6) and the reporting period start date (low value) is not Dec 1 or Jun 1, then the reporting period end date (high value) is 6 month from the start date.

```
<section>
  <id root="..."/>
  <code code="48780-1" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
        displayName="SPL product data elements section"/>
  <title/>
  <text>
    <paragraph>No Products to Report.</paragraph>
  </text>
```

4.2.2.10 If no products are reported in the product data element section of a Human Compounded Drug Label (75031-5) or Animal Compounded Drug Label (77647-6), i.e., the product data elements section contains no subject element, then the product data elements section contains section text with the single paragraph “No Products to Report” and the only section is the product data elements section.

4.2.2.11 If the document type is Human Compounded Drug Label (75031-5) or Animal Compounded Drug Label (77647-6) and the text section is included in the product data elements section, then there is no subject element.

4.2.2.12 If the document type is Human Compounded Drug Label (75031-5) or Animal Compounded Drug Label (77647-6) and no products are reported, then the facility can not be associated with any compounded drug in this period.

4.2.2.13 If the document type is Human Compounded Drug Label (75031-5) or Animal Compounded Drug Label (77647-6) with products reported in this period, then the establishment can not be associated with another Human Compounded Drug Label that states “No Products to Report” for this period.

5 NDC/NHRIC Labeler Code Request

5.1 Header

5.1.1 Document type

```
<document>
      <code  code="51726-8"
         codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
         displayName="NDC/NHRIC Labeler Code request"/>
```

Validation Procedures

5.1.1.1 Document code is NDC/NHRIC Labeler Code Request (51726-8), NDC Labeler Code Request - Animal Drug (72871-7), or NDC Labeler Code Inactivation (69968-6)

5.1.1.2 There is no title

5.1.1.3 If a document with the same set id has been previously submitted, then it is an NDC/NHRIC Labeler Code Request (51726-8) or NDC Labeler Code Request - Animal Drug (72871-7), or NDC Labeler Code Inactivation (69968-6).

5.1.1.4 If the document is an NDC Labeler Code Inactivation (69968-6), then an NDC/NHRIC Labeler Code Request (51726-8) or NDC Labeler Code Request - Animal Drug (72871-7) document with the same set id has been previously submitted

5.1.1.5 If the document is an NDC Labeler Code Inactivation (69968-6), then there is no labeler information.

5.1.1.6 If the document is an NDC Labeler Code Inactivation (69968-6), then all NDCs with the NDC Labeler Code linked to the NDC Labeler Code Inactivation file's set ID is associated with a product with a marketing end date.

5.1.2 Labeler information

```
<document>
  <author>
     <time/>
     <assignedEntity>
        <representedOrganization>
           <id extension="100000002" root="1.3.6.1.4.1.519.1"/>
           <id extension=”0001” root=”2.16.840.1.113883.6.69”/>
           <name>Mann's drug Store</name>
           <contactParty>
```

Validation Procedures

5.1.2.1 If the document is an NDC/NHRIC Labeler Code Request (51726-8) or NDC Labeler Code Request - Animal Drug (72871-7), then there is a labeler organization.

5.1.2.2 There are two ids (NDC/NHRIC labeler code and DUNS Number) (except for an initial labeler code request, which should be submitted with only one id (DUNS Number.))

5.1.2.3 One id, the DUNS number, and name are as in Section 2.1.5.

5.1.2.4 One id has the root 2.16.840.1.113883.6.69 and an extension (except for an initial labeler code request, which should be submitted without this id (NDC/NHRIC labeler code.))

5.1.2.5 There is no id root besides 1.3.6.1.4.1.519.1 and 2.16.840.1.113883.6.69

5.1.2.6 If no document with the same set id has been previously submitted, then the NDC labeler code has not been associated previously with a different setId (regardless of version)

5.1.2.7 The set id is not associated with any other id(NDC/NHRIC labeler code) with root 2.16.840.1.113883.6.69

5.1.2.8 The id extension(NDC/NHRIC labeler code) with the root 2.16.840.1.113883.6.69 has 4 or 5 digits

5.1.2.9 The id extension(NDC/NHRIC labeler code) with the root 2.16.840.1.113883.6.69 with 5 digits does not have a leading zero

5.1.2.10 The labeler code (id extension with the root 2.16.840.1.113883.6.69) is not (0)0000, (0)0001, (0)1500, (0)1800 or (0)1900.

5.1.2.11 There is one contact party

5.1.3 Labeler Detail Information

To describe details of a labeler such as physical address, US agent, and business operations the following structure is added

```
<document>
  <author>
    <assignedEntity>
      <representedOrganization>
        <id extension="100000002" root="1.3.6.1.4.1.519.1"/>
        <id extension=”0001” root=”2.16.840.1.113883.6.69”/>
        <name>Mann's drug Store</name>
        <contactParty>...</contactParty>

        <assignedEntity>
          <assignedOrganization>
            <assignedEntity><!-- Labeler Details -->
              <assignedOrganization>
                <id extension="100000002" root="1.3.6.1.4.1.519.1"/>
                <name>Mann's drug Store</name>
                <addr>...</addr>
```

The format is similar to the Establishment description. The only difference is that there is only one such “Establishment” with the same DUNS number and name as the Labeler.

Validation Procedures

5.1.3.1 If the document is not a NDC/NHRIC Labeler Code Request (51726-8), then there is no labeler detail information.

5.1.3.2 Labeler detail information has no registrant information and exactly one “Establishment”

5.1.3.3 Labeler detail information has exactly one “Establishment”

5.1.3.4 There is one id.

5.1.3.5 Id (DUNS Number) has the root 1.3.6.1.4.1.519.1

5.1.3.6 Id (DUNS Number) is the same as the id of the labeler organization.

5.1.3.7 Name is the same as the name of the labeler organization.

5.1.3.8 Labeler detail information has an address as in Section 2.1.6.

5.1.3.9 There are no further elements besides the id, name, addr, and Labeler US Agent on this level.

5.1.4 Labeler US Agent

```
<document>
  <author>
    <assignedEntity>
      <representedOrganization>
        <id extension="100000002" root="1.3.6.1.4.1.519.1"/>
        <id extension="0001" root=”2.16.840.1.113883.6.69”/>
        <name>Mann's drug Store</name>
        <contactParty>...</contactParty>

        <assignedEntity>
          <assignedOrganization>
            <assignedEntity>
              <assignedOrganization>
                <id extension="100000002" root="1.3.6.1.4.1.519.1"/>
                <assignedEntity>
                  <assignedOrganization> <!-- labeler US agent -->
                     <id extension="100000001" root="1.3.6.1.4.1.519.1"/>
                     <name>Simmons Reps Company</name>
                     <telecom value="tel:+1-800-555-1212"/>
                     <telecom value="mailto:contact@USagent.com"/>
                   </assignedOrganization>
                   <performance>
                     <actDefinition>
                       <code code="C73330" displayName="United States agent"
                             codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"/>
```

Validation Procedures

5.1.4.1 If the country for the labeler is not “USA”, then there may be one US agent

5.1.4.2 US agent is as defined in Section 6.1.4.

5.1.5 Labeler Operation

To describe the activity of a labeler with business operations the following structure is added.

```
<document>
  <author>
    <assignedEntity>
      <representedOrganization>
        <id extension="100000002" root="1.3.6.1.4.1.519.1"/>
        <id extension="0001" root=”2.16.840.1.113883.6.69”/>
        <name>Mann's drug Store</name>
        <contactParty>...</contactParty>
```

```
        <assignedEntity>
          <assignedOrganization>
            <assignedEntity>
              <assignedOrganization>
                <id extension="100000002" root="1.3.6.1.4.1.519.1"/>
              <assignedOrganization>
              <performance>
                <actDefinition>
                  <code code="C43360" displayName="manufacture"
                        codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"/>
                  <subjectOf>
                    <approval>
                      <code code="C106643" displayName="Manufactures human
prescription drug products"
                        codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"/>
                    </approval>
                  </subjectOf>
                </actDefinition>
```

Validation Procedures

5.1.5.1 There are one or more labeler operation details (performance act definitions).

5.1.5.2 Each performance act definition (business operation) has one code.

5.1.5.3 Code system is 2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1

5.1.5.4 Display name matches the code

5.1.5.5 The code comes from the business operations list except for *import* (C73599) and *united states agent* (C73330).

5.1.5.6 Each business operation code is mentioned only once.

5.1.5.7 There is one or more business operation qualifier except when business operation is analysis (C25391) or API manufacture (C82401).

5.1.5.8 Business operation qualifier has one code.

5.1.5.9 Code system is 2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1

5.1.5.10 Display name matches the code

5.1.5.11 If the business operation is *manufacture* (C43360), then the business operation qualifier is *manufactures human prescription drug products* (C106643) and/or *manufactures human over-the-counter drug products* (C106645).

5.1.5.12 If the business operation is *distributes drug products under own private label* (C73608), then the business operation qualifier is *distributes human*

prescription drug products (C111077) and/or *distributes human over-the-counter drug products* (C111078.)

5.1.5.13 If the qualifiers Intent to compound 506e (drug shortage) drugs (C112087), No intent to compound 506e (drug shortage) drugs (C112091), Compounding from bulk ingredients (C112092), Not compounding from bulk ingredients (C112093), Compounding sterile products (C112094), or Not compounding sterile products (C112095), then the operation is *Human drug compounding outsourcing facility* (C112113).

5.1.6 FDA Initiated Labeler Code Inactivation

```
<document>
  <legalAuthenticator>
    <assignedEntity>
      <representedOrganization>
```

5.1.6.1 If the document is an FDA-initiated NDC Labeler Code Inactivation (69968-6) or an FDA initiated NDC Labeler Code Re-Activation, then the proper legalAuthenticator element is included.

5.1.6.2 One id is a DUNS number with the root 1.3.6.1.4.1.519.1

5.1.6.3 The id with the root 1.3.6.1.4.1.519.1 (DUNS number) has a 9-digit extension

5.1.6.4 The proper FDA id is provided.

5.1.6.5 The proper FDA name is provided.

5.1.6.6 If the most recent document of this setId was an NDC Labeler Code Inactivation (69968-6), then an FDA-Initiated NDC Labeler Code (51726-8) SPL file with <legalAuthenticator> element has been submitted before NDC Labeler Code (51726-8) SPL file can be submitted by the labeler.

5.2 Body - Empty

Use an empty document body:

```
<document>
   <component>
      <structuredBody/>
```

or

```
<document>
   <component>
      <nonXMLBody>
         <text/>
```

5.2.1.1 The document body is empty

6 Establishment registration

Establishment registrations have only header information with a single registrant organization and one or more registered establishments. Aside from the proper *Establishment Registration* document type, two other document types can be used for establishment registration submissions, i.e., the *No Change Notification*, the *Establishment Deregistration* and *Out of Business Notification*.

6.1 Header

6.1.1 Document type

```
<document>
   <code  code="51725-0"
          codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
          displayName="Establishment registration"/>
```

Validation Procedures

6.1.1.1 Document type is “Establishment registration” (51725-0), “Establishment De-Registration” (70097-1), “No change notification” (53410-7), or “Out of Business Notification” (53411-5).

6.1.1.2 The effective time year matches the current year.

6.1.1.3 There is no title

6.1.1.4 For a No change notification (53410-7), or Establishment De-Registration (70097-1) the set ID in this document should be the same set id included in a previously submitted Establishment Registration (51725-0), No change notification (53410-7) or Establishment De-Registration (70097-1), with information about your establishment(s).

6.1.1.5 If a document with the same set id as the one in this file has been previously submitted, then the document type in this file is Establishment Registration (51725-0), Establishment De-Registration (70097-1), or No change notification (53410-7).

6.1.2 Registrant information

```
<document>
  <author>
    <assignedEntity>
      <representedOrganization>
        <!-- manufacturer, may be pass-through -->
        <assignedEntity>

<assignedOrganization> <!-- registrant -->
  <id extension="100000001" root="1.3.6.1.4.1.519.1"/>
  <name>Acme drug company</name>
  <contactParty>
```

Validation Procedures

6.1.2.1 If the document type is “No change notification” or “Establishment De-Registration”, then there is no registrant information.

6.1.2.2 If the document type is “Establishment registration”, then there is registrant information.

6.1.2.3 There is one id, the DUNS number and name are as in Section 2.1.5.

6.1.2.4 id (registrant’s DUNS Number) is not associated with any other set id of document type “Establishment registration”

6.1.2.5 set id is not associated with any other registrant id(DUNS Number).

6.1.2.6 There is one contact party as in 2.1.8.

6.1.2.7 Establishment registration has no labeler information (no validation rules defined for it).

6.1.3 Establishment Information

```
<document>
  <author>
    <assignedEntity>
      <representedOrganization>
        <!-- manufacturer, may be pass-through -->
          <assignedEntity>
            <assignedOrganization> <!-- registrant -->
              <assignedEntity>

<assignedOrganization> <!-- establishment -->
  <id extension="100000001" root="1.3.6.1.4.1.519.1"/>
  <id extension="123456" root=“2.16.840.1.113883.4.82”/>

  <name>Middleton Manufacturing company</name>
```

```
  <addr>
    <streetAddressLine>123 Burl Road</streetAddressLine>
    <city>Dublin</city>
    <country code="IRL" codeSystem="1.0.3166.1.2.3">Ireland</country>
  </addr>

  <contactParty>
```

Validation Procedures

6.1.3.1 If the document type is “establishment registration”, then there are one or more establishments.

6.1.3.2 If the document type is No change notification (53410-7) or Establishment De-Registration (70097-1), then there is no establishment information.

6.1.3.3 Establishment has one or two id elements, one id, the DUNS number, and name are as in Section 2.1.5.

6.1.3.4 DUNS number is not associated with another establishment in the same SPL file.

6.1.3.5 DUNS number is not associated with any other set id for document type “Establishment registration”

6.1.3.6 The DUNS number along with the establishment name and address information match the DUNS number record in the Dun and Bradstreet database

6.1.3.7 If there is a second id then its root is 2.16.840.1.113883.4.82 and the extension (FEI number) is 7 or 10 digits

6.1.3.8 Each establishment has an address as in Section 2.1.6.

6.1.3.9 There is one contact party as in Section 2.1.8.

6.1.3.10 There is no assigned entity other than for US Agent or Import business.

6.1.4 Establishment US agent

```
<document>
  <author>
    <assignedEntity>
      <representedOrganization>
        <!-- manufacturer, may be pass-through -->
          <assignedEntity>
            <assignedOrganization> <!-- registrant -->
              <assignedEntity>
```

```
<assignedOrganization> <!-- establishment -->
  <addr>
    <country code="IRL" codeSystem="1.0.3166.1.2.3">Ireland</country>
  </addr>

  <assignedEntity>
    <assignedOrganization> <!-- establishment US agent -->
      <id extension="100000001" root="1.3.6.1.4.1.519.1"/>

      <name>Simmons Reps Company</name>

      <telecom value="tel:+1-800-555-1212"/>
      <telecom value="mailto:contact@USagent.com"/>

    </assignedOrganization>

    <performance>
      <actDefinition>
        <code code="C73330" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
              displayName="United States agent"/>
```

Validation Procedures

6.1.4.1 If the country for the establishment is not “USA”, then there is one US agent

6.1.4.2 US agent element has code, code system and display name are as above

6.1.4.3 If the country for the establishment is “USA”, then there is no US agent

6.1.4.4 There is one id, (the DUNS number), and name are as in Section 2.1.5.

6.1.4.5 There is a telephone number and email address.

6.1.4.6 The US agent’s DUNS number matches the DUNS number record in the Dun and Bradstreet database and show a USA location.

6.1.5 Import business

```
<document>
  <author>
    <assignedEntity>
      <representedOrganization>
        <!-- manufacturer, may be pass-through -->
          <assignedEntity>
            <assignedOrganization>
              <assignedEntity> <!-- registrant -->

<assignedOrganization> <!-- establishment -->
  <addr>
    <country code="IRL" codeSystem="1.0.3166.1.2.3">Ireland</country>
  </addr>

  <assignedEntity>
    <assignedOrganization> <!-- establishment’s importer -->

      <id extension="100000005" root="1.3.6.1.4.1.519.1"/>
```

```
      <name>Waytogo importers</name>
      <telecom value="tel:+1-800-555-1214"/>
      <telecom value="mailto:contact@waytogo.com"/>
    </assignedOrganization>
    <performance>
      <actDefinition>
        <code code="C73599" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
              displayName="import"/>
```

Validation Procedures

6.1.5.1 If the country code for the establishment is not “USA”, then there may be one or more import businesses.

6.1.5.2 Each business has code, code system and display name are as above.

6.1.5.3 If the country code for the establishment is USA, then there are no import businesses

6.1.5.4 There is one id, the DUNS number and name are as in Section 2.1.5.

6.1.5.5 There is telephone number and email address.

6.1.6 Establishment operation

```
<document>
  <author>
    <assignedEntity>
      <representedOrganization>
        <!-- manufacturer, may be pass-through -->
          <assignedEntity>
            <assignedOrganization> <!-- registrant -->

<assignedEntity>
  <assignedOrganization>
    <!-- establishment -->
  </assignedOrganization>
  <performance>
     <actDefinition>
       <code code="C43360" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
             displayName="manufacture"/>
```

Validation Procedures

6.1.6.1 There are one or more establishment operation details (performance act definitions).

6.1.6.2 Each performance act definition has one code.

6.1.6.3 Code system is 2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1

6.1.6.4 Display name matches the code

6.1.6.5 The code comes from the business operations list except for import (C73599), united states agent (C73330), distributes drug products under own private label (C73608), api/fdf analytical testing(C101509), clinical bioequivalence or bioavailability study(C101511), fdf manufacture(C101510) and in vitro bioequivalence or bioanalytical testing(C101512), wholesale drug distributor (C118411) and third-party logistics provider (C118412.)

6.1.6.6 Each business operation code is mentioned only once per establishment.

6.1.6.7 There is no product reference.

6.1.6.8 If the business operation is Transfill (C125710), then the business operation qualifier is Transfills Medical Gas (C126091).

6.1.7 Business Operation Qualifier

```
<performance>
  <actDefinition>
    ...
    <subjectOf>
      <approval>
        <code code="Qualifier Code" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
              displayName="Qualifier Display Name"/>
      </approval>
    </subjectOf>
```

Validation Procedures

6.1.7.1 If the business operation is *Human drug compounding outsourcing facility* (C112113) , then there are 2 or 3 operation qualifiers.

6.1.7.2 Business operation qualifier has one code.

6.1.7.3 Code system is 2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1

6.1.7.4 Display name matches the code

6.1.7.5 One of the qualifiers is *I*ntent to compound 506e (drug shortage) drugs (C112087) or *N*o intent to compound 506e (drug shortage) drugs (C112091).

6.1.7.6 Qualifiers *I*ntent to compound 506e (drug shortage) drugs (C112087) and *N*o intent to compound 506e (drug shortage) drugs (C112091), both should not be present at a time.

6.1.7.7 One of the qualifiers is Compounding from bulk ingredients (C112092) or Not compounding from bulk ingredients (C112093).

6.1.7.8 If one of the business operation qualifiers is compounding from bulk ingredients (C112092), then one of the following business operation qualifiers should be included: Compounding sterile products (C112094), and Not compounding sterile products (C112095).

6.1.7.9 If one of the business operation qualifiers is *Not compounding from bulk ingredients* (C112093), then the following business operation qualifiers should not be included: *Compounding sterile products* (C112094), and *Not compounding sterile products* (C112095).

6.1.7.10 If the qualifiers Intent to compound 506e (drug shortage) drugs (C112087), No intent to compound 506e (drug shortage) drugs (C112091), Compounding from bulk ingredients (C112092), Not compounding from bulk ingredients (C112093), Compounding sterile products (C112094), or Not compounding sterile products (C112095), then the operation is *Human drug compounding outsourcing facility* (C112113).

6.1.7.11 There are one or more Business Operation Qualifiers for Establishment Registration SPL(51725-0) except if the business operation is analysis, API manufacture, or medicated animal feed manufacture.

6.2 Body - Empty

Use an empty document body:

```
<document>
   <component>
      <structuredBody/>
```

or

```
<document>
   <component>
      <nonXMLBody>
         <text/>
```

6.2.1.1 The document body is empty

7 Out of Business Notification

The Out of Business Notification allows de-listing of all the establishments of an Establishment registration.

7.1 Header

7.1.1 Document type

```
<document>
   <code  code="53411-5"
          codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
          displayName="Out of business notification"/>
```

Validation Procedures

7.1.1.1 Document type is “Out of business notification” (53411-5)

7.1.1.2 The effective time year matches the current year.

7.1.1.3 There is no title

7.1.1.4 An Establishment Registration (51725-0), Establishment De-Registration (70097-1), No change notification (53410-7), Identification of CBER-regulated generic drug facility (72090-4), Wholesale Drug Distributors and Third-Party Logistics Facility Report (75030-7) or Withdrawal of Wholesale Drug Distributors and Third-Party Logistics Facility Report (77573-4) with the same set id has been previously submitted.

7.1.1.5 If a document with the same set id has been previously submitted, then it is an Establishment Registration (51725-0), Establishment De-Registration (70097-1), No change notification (53410-7), Identification of CBER-regulated generic drug facility (72090-4), Wholesale Drug Distributors and Third-Party Logistics Facility Report (75030-7) or Withdrawal of Wholesale Drug Distributors and Third-Party Logistics Facility Report (77573-4).

7.1.1.6 There is no labeler, registrant, or establishment information.

7.2 Body - Empty

Use an empty document body:

```
<document>
   <component>
      <structuredBody/>
```

or

```
<document>
   <component>
      <nonXMLBody>
         <text/>
```

7.2.1.1 The document body is empty

8 Pharmacologic Class Indexing

8.1 Header

8.1.1 Document type

```
<document>
   <code code="60685-5" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
         displayName="Indexing - Pharmacologic Class"/>
```

Validation Procedures

8.1.1.1 Document code is as above

8.1.1.2 If a document with the same set id has been previously submitted, then it is of the same type.

8.1.2 Author information

Pharmacologic class indexing is maintained by FDA:

```
<author>
  <time/>
  <assignedEntity>
    <representedOrganization>
      <id root="1.3.6.1.4.1.519.1" extension="927645523"/>
      <name>Food and Drug Administration</name>
```

Pharmacologic classes and their hierarchy are maintained by NDF-RT:

```
<author>
  <time/>
  <assignedEntity>
    <representedOrganization>
      <id root="1.3.6.1.4.1.519.1" extension="926891516"/>
      <name>Department of Veterans Affairs</name>
```

8.1.2.1 Author information for pharmacologic class indexing is as one of the above

8.2 Body

```
<section>
  <id root="ffabedf9-6bde-4787-beb0-abd214307427"/>
  <code code="48779-3" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
        displayName="SPL Indexing Data Elements Section"/>
  <title/>
  <text/>
  <effectiveTime value="20101007"/>
  <subject>
```

Validation Procedures

8.2.1 Pharmacologic Class Indexing Section

8.2.1.1 If the document type is 60685-5, then the document contains one SPL Indexing Data Elements section as above.

8.2.1.2 Value of effective time is same as value of effective time in document information.

8.2.2 Pharmacologic Class Indexing

```
<section>
  <subject>

<identifiedSubstance>
  <id root="0987654321" extension="2.16.840.1.113883.4.9"/>
  <identifiedSubstance>
    <code code="0987654321" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.4.9"/>
    <name>tazminic acid</name>

    <asSpecializedKind>
```

8.2.2.1 There is one active moiety.

8.2.2.2 There is one active moiety code.

8.2.2.3 Code system is 2.16.840.1.113883.4.9

8.2.2.4 Code and code system are the same as the parent element id's extension and root respectively.

8.2.2.5 There is one active moiety name

8.2.2.6 Active moiety name matches code

8.2.2.7 The same active moiety is not described in a pharmacologic class indexing document with a different set id.

8.2.2.8 There is no document with the same set id but a different active moiety.

8.2.2.9 There are one or more pharmacologic class components

```
<asSpecializedKind>
  <generalizedMaterialKind>
    <code code="N0000012345" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.5"
          displayName="melhoridizing tazminate [EPC]"/>
    <name>melhoridizing tazminate (MTZ)</name>
```

8.2.2.10 Under each pharmacologic class component, there is a code

8.2.2.11 Code starts with a uppercase N, followed by 10 digits

8.2.2.12 Code system is 2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.5

8.2.2.13 This is one display name

8.2.2.14 Display name matches code and is the formal NDF-RT name with the bracket indicating the kind of concept [EPC, MoA, PE, Chemical/Ingredient]

8.2.2.15 If the concept is an External Pharmacologic Class [EPC], there is a name with the preferred FDA name.

8.2.3 Pharmacologic Class Definition

```
<section>
  <subject>

<identifiedSubstance>
  <id root="N0000012345" extension="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.5"/>
  <identifiedSubstance>
    <code code="N0000012345" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.5"
          displayName="melhoridizing tazminate [EPC]"/>
    <name use="L">melhoridizing tazminate (MTZ)</name>
    <name use="A">melhoridizing tazminate [EPC]</name>
    <name use="A">tazminic melhoridizer</name>

    <asSpecializedKind>
```

8.2.3.1 There are one or more pharmacologic classes.

8.2.3.2 There is one code.

8.2.3.3 The rules for the pharmacologic class code, code system and displayName are as in the respective procedures 8.2.2.11ff

8.2.3.4 Code and code system are the same as the parent element id’s extension and root respectively.

8.2.3.5 There are one or more names

8.2.3.6 One name has the use attribute “L” indicating the preferred name.

8.2.3.7 If the concept is not an External Pharmacologic Class [EPC], then the name with the use attribute “L” is the same as the displayName.

8.2.3.8 There are zero, one or more defining super-classes

```
<asSpecializedKind>
  <generalizedMaterialKind>
    <code code="N0000012345" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.5"
          displayName="melhoridizing tazminate [EPC]"/>
```

8.2.3.9 Under each defining super-class there is a code

8.2.3.10 The rules for the defining super-class code, code system and displayName are as in the respective procedures 8.2.2.11ff

8.2.3.11 There is no other name element.

9 Dietary Supplement Labeling

Dietary supplement labeling provides a description of the product.

9.1 Header

9.1.1 Document Type

9.1.1.1 Document types for dietary supplement labeling is 58476-3 FDA product label Dietary supplement.

9.1.1.2 If a document with the same set id has been previously submitted, then it is of the same type.

9.1.1.3 If the product type “changes” from Drug (34391-3, 34390-5) to Dietary Supplement, then submit a new listing file with new NDC codes for the OTC drug.

9.1.1.4 The set id is not associated with any top level product with a different Labeler Prefix

9.1.2 Labeler information

```
<document>
   <code  code="58476-3" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
          displayName="Dietary Supplement"/>

<author>

<assignedEntity>
  <representedOrganization>
    <id extension="100000007" root="1.3.6.1.4.1.519.1"/>
    <name>Acme drug company</name>
```

Validation Procedures

9.1.2.1 There is one labeler

9.1.2.2 There is one id, the DUNS number, and name is as in Section 2.1.5.

9.1.2.3 There is no other element besides id, name and registrant.

9.1.3 Registrant information

```
<document>
  <author>
    <assignedEntity>
      <representedOrganization>

<assignedEntity>
  <confidentialityCode code="B" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.25"/>

  <assignedOrganization>
    <id extension="100000008" root="1.3.6.1.4.1.519.1"/>
    <name>Acme drug company</name>
```

Validation Procedures

9.1.3.1 There may be registrant information

9.1.3.2 If there is a registrant, then there is one id, (the DUNS number) and a name as in Section 2.1.5.

9.1.3.3 There is no other element besides id, name and establishments.

9.2 Body

9.2.1 Required Sections

Validation Procedures

9.2.1.1 The document body contains three or more sections

9.2.1.2 One section contains the product data elements

9.2.1.3 There is a section with the code 51945-4 (principal display panel) with an image of the carton/container label including the Supplement Facts.

9.2.1.4 There is one section with the code 69718-5 (Statement of Identity section).

9.2.1.5 Aside from product data elements (48780-1), principal display panel (51945-4) and Statement of Identity (69718-5) sections, there are only sections with the

code 69719-3 (Health Claim section), 34071-1 (Warning section) for the warning statement, 42232-9 (Precaution section) for the notice statement, 50741-8 (Safe Handling Warning Section) for the safe handling statement and 34068-7 (Dosage & Administration section).

10 Medical Food Labeling

Medical Food labeling provides a description of the product.

10.1 Header

10.1.1 Document Type

10.1.1.1 Document types for Medical Food labeling is 58475-5 FDA product label Medical Food.

10.1.1.2 If a document with the same set id has been previously submitted, then it is of the same type.

10.1.2 Labeler information

```
<document>
   <code  code="58475-5" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
          displayName="Medical Food"/>

<author>

<assignedEntity>
  <representedOrganization>
    <id extension="100000007" root="1.3.6.1.4.1.519.1"/>
    <name>Acme drug company</name>
```

Validation Procedures

10.1.2.1 There is one labeler

10.1.2.2 There is one id, the DUNS number, and name is as in Section 2.1.5.

10.1.2.3 The set id is not associated with any top level product with a different Labeler Prefix

10.1.2.4 There is no other element besides id, name and registrant.

10.1.3 Registrant information

```
<document>
  <author>
    <assignedEntity>
      <representedOrganization>
```

```
<assignedEntity>
  <confidentialityCode code="B" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.25"/>
  <assignedOrganization>
    <id extension="100000008" root="1.3.6.1.4.1.519.1"/>
    <name>Acme drug company</name>
```

Validation Procedures

10.1.3.1 There may be registrant information

10.1.3.2 If there is a registrant, then there is one id, (the DUNS number) and a name as in Section 2.1.5.

10.1.3.3 There is no other element besides id, name and establishments.

10.1.4 Establishment information

```
<document>
   <author>
      <assignedEntity>
         <representedOrganization> <!-- Labeler -->
            <assignedEntity>
               <assignedOrganization> <!-- Registrant -->

<assignedEntity>
   <confidentialityCode code="B" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.25"/>
   <assignedOrganization>  <!-- Establishment -->
      <id extension="1000000019" root="1.3.6.1.4.1.519.1"/>
      <name>Middleton Manufacturing company</name>
   </assignedOrganization>
   <performance>
      <actDefinition>
         <code  code="C43360"
                codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
                displayName="manufacture"/>
```

Validation Procedures

10.1.4.1 If the marketing status code for any of the products is **not** *completed*, then there are one or more establishments.

10.1.4.2 There is one id (the DUNS number) and name is as in Section 2.1.5.

10.1.4.3 id is not used for other establishments in the file

10.1.4.4 The establishment id matches an establishment with same id submitted in documents of type “establishment registration” in the same or previous calendar year.

10.1.4.5 Establishment (“assignedOrganization”) has no other element besides id and name.

10.1.4.6 There are one or more business operations.

10.1.4.7 Act definition display name matches code

10.1.4.8 The code comes from the business operations list except for import (C73599) , united states agent (C73330) and distributes drug products under own private label (C73608)

10.1.4.9 Act definition code matches code for an establishment with same id previously submitted in documents of type “establishment registration”

10.2 Body

10.2.1 Required Sections

Validation Procedures

10.2.1.1 The document body contains two or more sections

10.2.1.2 One section contains the product data elements

10.2.1.3 There is a section with the code 51945-4 (principal display panel) with an image of the carton/container label.

11 Medical Device Labeling

11.1 Header

11.1.1 Document Type

11.1.1.1 Document types are 69403-4 FDA product label OTC Medical Device or 69404-2 FDA product label Prescription Medical Device.

11.1.1.2 If a document with the same set id has been previously submitted, then it is of the same type.

11.1.2 Labeler information

```
<document>
  <code  code="..." codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
         displayName="..."/>
```

```
<author>
<assignedEntity>
  <representedOrganization>
    <id extension="100000007" root="1.3.6.1.4.1.519.1"/>
    <name>Acme drug company</name>
    <contactParty>
      <addr>
        <streetAddressLine>1625 29th street</streetAddressLine>
        <city>Camden</city>
        <state>NJ</state> <postalCode>08101</postalCode>
        <country code="USA" codeSystem="1.0.3166.1.2.3">USA</country>
      </addr>
      <telecom value="tel:+1-800-555-1213;ext=112"/>
      <telecom value="mailto:Bob.Jones@acme.com"/>
      <contactPerson>
        <name>Bob Jones</name>
      </contactPerson>
    </contactParty>
```

Validation Procedures

11.1.2.1 There is one labeler

11.1.2.2 There is one DUNS number and name.

11.1.2.3 There are no other elements.

11.2 Body

11.2.1 Required Sections

Validation Procedures

11.2.1.1 The document body contains three or more sections

11.2.1.2 One section contains the product data elements

11.2.1.3 There is a section with the code 51945-4 (principal display panel) with an image of the carton/container label.

11.2.1.4

12 Billing Unit Indexing

This document links the NDC for a marketed drug product with the National Council for Prescription Drug Programs (NCPDP) standard billing unit.

12.1 Header

12.1.1 Document Type

```
<document ...>
  <code code="71446-9" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
        displayName="Indexing - Billing Unit" />
```

Validation Procedures

12.1.1.1 The code for the document type is 71446-9 (Indexing – Billing Unit)

12.1.1.2 If a document with the same set id has been previously submitted, then it is of the same type

12.1.2 Author

```
<author>
  <assignedEntity>
    <representedOrganization>
      <id root="1.3.6.1.4.1.519.1" extension="021660014"/>
      <name>National Council for Prescription Drug Programs</name>
```

Validation Procedures

12.1.2.1 The author is the “National Council for Prescription Drug Programs”

12.1.2.2 The DUNS Number for the author is 021660014

12.1.2.3 There are no other author elements than id and name.

12.2 Body

12.2.1 Indexing Section

```
<section>
  <id root="ffabedf9-6bde-4787-beb0-abd214307427"/>
  <code code="48779-3" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
        displayName="SPL indexing data elements section" />
  <title/>
  <text/>
  <effectiveTime value="20121007"/>
  <subject>
```

Validation Procedures

12.2.1.1 If the document type is 71446-9, then the document contains one SPL Indexing Data Elements section as above.

12.2.1.2 Value of effective time is same as value of effective time in document information.

12.2.2 NDC

```
<section>
  <subject>
    <manufacturedProduct>
      <manufacturedProduct>
        <asContent>
          <containerPackagedProduct>
            <code code="NDC Package Code"
                  codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.69"/>
```

Validation Procedures

12.2.2.1 There is an NDC package code inside an otherwise empty container element inside an otherwise empty manufactured product element.

12.2.2.2 NDC contains three segments divided by hyphens

12.2.2.3 Code system for NDC is 2.16.840.1.113883.6.69

12.2.2.4 The NDC matches an NDC contained in a listing / labeling document previously submitted.

12.2.2.5 The NDC is not associated with another set id with the document type Indexing - Billing Unit

12.2.3 Billing Unit

```
<section>
  <subject>
    <manufacturedProduct>
      <manufacturedProduct>
        <asContent>
          <containerPackagedProduct>
            <code code="NDC Package Code"
                  codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.69"/>
          </containerPackagedProduct>
          <subjectOf>
            <characteristic>
              <code code="NCPDPBILLINGUNIT"
                    codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.1.11.19255"/>
              <value xsi:type="CV"
                     code="Billing Unit Code"
                     codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.2.13" xsi:type="CE"/>
```

Validation Procedures

12.2.3.1 There is one billing unit code value

12.2.3.2 Billing unit value is “GM”, “ML” or “EA”

12.2.3.3 Code system for billing unit is 2.16.840.1.113883.2.13

12.2.3.4 There are no other package data elements

12.2.3.5 There are no other product data elements.

13 Generic User Fee Facility Self-Identification

Generic user fee facility self-identification has only header information with a single registrant organization and one or more self-identified facilitys.

13.1 Header

13.1.1 Document type

```
<document>
  <code code="72090-4" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
     displayName="Identification of CBER-regulated generic drug facility"/>
```

Validation Procedures

13.1.1.1 Document type is “Identification of CBER-regulated generic drug facility” (72090-4) or “Generic Drug Facility Identification Submission” (71743-9).

13.1.1.2 The effective time year matches the current year.

13.1.1.3 There is no title

13.1.1.4 If a document with the same set id has been previously submitted, then it is of the same type.

13.1.1.5 Documents of type “Generic Drug Facility Identification Submission” (71743-9) are not submitted via the OC submission folder or the listed errors below need be corrected. (Contact CDEReFacility@fda.hhs.gov for any questions.)

13.1.2 Registrant information

```
<document>
  <author>
    <assignedEntity>
      <representedOrganization>
        <!-- manufacturer, may be pass-through -->
        <assignedEntity>
```

```
<assignedOrganization> <!-- registrant -->
  <id extension="100000001" root="1.3.6.1.4.1.519.1"/>
  <name>Green Clover Fine Drugs</name>
  <contactParty>
    <addr>
      <streetAddressLine>1625 29th street</streetAddressLine>
      <city>Dublin</city>
      <country code="IRL" codeSystem="1.0.3166.1.2.3">Ireland</country>
    </addr>
    <telecom value="tel:+353-12-551213"/>
    <telecom value="mailto:jmcfadden@greenclover.com"/>
    <telecom value="fax:+353-12-551214"/>
    <contactPerson>
      <name>Julie McFadden</name>
    </contactPerson>
  </contactParty>
```

Validation Procedures

13.1.2.1 There is registrant information.

13.1.2.2 There is one id, the DUNS number and name are as in Section 2.1.5.

13.1.2.3 id (document id) is not associated with any other set id of the same document type.

13.1.2.4 set id is not associated with any other registrant id of the same document type.

13.1.2.5 There is one contact party as in 2.1.8.

13.1.2.6 GDUFA facility identification submission has no labeler information.

13.1.3 Facility Information

```
<document>
  <author>
    <assignedEntity>
      <representedOrganization>
        <!-- manufacturer, may be pass-through -->
          <assignedEntity>
            <assignedOrganization> <!-- registrant -->
              <assignedEntity>

<assignedOrganization> <!-- facility -->
  <id extension="100000001" root="1.3.6.1.4.1.519.1"/>
  <id extension="123456" root="2.16.840.1.113883.4.82"/>

  <name>Middleton Manufacturing company</name>

  <addr>
    <streetAddressLine>123 Burl Road</streetAddressLine>
    <city>Dublin</city>
    <country code="IRL" codeSystem="1.0.3166.1.2.3">Ireland</country>
  </addr>
```

```
  <contactParty>
    <addr>
      <streetAddressLine>1625 29th street</streetAddressLine>
      <city>Dublin</city>
      <country code="IRL" codeSystem="1.0.3166.1.2.3">Ireland</country>
    </addr>
    <telecom value="tel:+353-12-551213"/>
    <telecom value="mailto:pmcdonald@middletown.com"/>
    <telecom value="fax:+353-12-551214"/>
    <contactPerson>
      <name>Patrick McDonald</name>
    </contactPerson>
  </contactParty>
```

Validation Procedures

13.1.3.1 There are one or more facilities:

13.1.3.2 Facilities have two id elements, one id, the DUNS number, and name are as in Section 2.1.5.

13.1.3.3 DUNS number is not associated with another facility in the same SPL file.

13.1.3.4 DUNS number is not associated with any other set id of the same document type.

13.1.3.5 The DUNS number along with the facility name and address information match the DUNS number record in the Dun and Bradstreet database

13.1.3.6 There is a second id, the FEI with root 2.16.840.1.113883.4.82 and 7 or 10 digit extension.

13.1.3.7 Each facility has an address as in Section 2.1.6.

13.1.3.8 There is one contact party as in Section 2.1.8.

13.1.3.9 There is no further assigned entity.

13.1.4 Facility operation

```
<document>
  <author>
    <assignedEntity>
      <representedOrganization>
        <!-- manufacturer, may be pass-through -->
          <assignedEntity>
            <assignedOrganization> <!-- registrant -->

<assignedEntity>
  <assignedOrganization>
    <!-- facility -->
  </assignedOrganization>
```

```
  <performance>
    <actDefinition>
      <code code="C43360" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
            displayName="manufacture"/>
```

Validation Procedures

13.1.4.1 There are one or more facility operation details (performance act definitions).

13.1.4.2 Each performance act definition has one code.

13.1.4.3 Code system is 2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1

13.1.4.4 Display name matches the code

13.1.4.5 The code comes from the business operations list.

13.1.4.6 The business operation code is one of the following: API Manufacture (C82401), FDF Manufacture (C101510), Positron Emission Tomography Drug Production (C91403), Clinical Bioequivalence or Bioavailability Study (C101511), In Vitro Bioequivalence or Bioanalytical Testing (C101512), API/FDF Analytical Testing (C101509), Pack (C84731), and Repack (C73606).

13.1.4.7 Each business operation code and qualifier is mentioned only once per facility.

13.1.5 Business Operation Qualifier

All facilities submitted in an Identification of CBER-regulated generic drug facility submission are implicitly engaged in the production of generic drugs. A “non-generic qualifier” can be used to mark these facilities as *also* engaged in the production of non-generic (brand, innovator) drugs:

```
<performance>
  <actDefinition>
    ...
    <subjectOf>
      <approval>
        <code code="C101886" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
              displayName="manufactures non-generics"/>
      </approval>
    </subjectOf>
```

Validation Procedures

13.1.5.1 There is zero or one business operation qualifier or application number.

13.1.5.2 Qualifier has one code.

13.1.5.3 Code system is 2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1

13.1.5.4 Display name matches the code

13.1.5.5 The code is *Manufactures Non-Generics* (C101886)

13.2 Body - Empty

Use an empty document body:

```
<document>
   <component>
      <structuredBody/>
```

or

```
<document>
   <component>
      <nonXMLBody>
         <text/>
```

13.2.1.1 The document body is empty

14 Substance Indexing

14.1 Header

14.1.1 Document type

```
<document>
   <code code="64124-1" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
         displayName="Indexing - Substance"/>
```

Validation Procedures

14.1.1.1 Document code is as above

14.1.1.2 If a document with the same set id has been previously submitted, then it is of the same type.

14.1.1.3 There is an author.

14.1.2 Author information

Substance indexing is maintained by 2 authorized FDA staff members, the primary author who prepares the document (revision) and a second verifier who reviews it prior to becoming publishable.

```
<document ...>
  <!-- ... -->

<author>
  <time/>
  <assignedEntity>
    <representedOrganization>
      <id root="1.3.6.1.4.1.519.1" extension="927645523"/>
      <name>Food and Drug Administration</name>
```

Validation Procedures

14.1.2.1 Author organization is FDA

14.2 Body

```
<section>
  <id root="ffabedf9-6bde-4787-beb0-abd214307427"/>
  <code code="48779-3" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
        displayName="SPL Indexing Data Elements Section"/>
    <title/>
    <text/>
    <effectiveTime value="20101007"/>
    <subject>
```

Validation Procedures

14.2.1 Substance Indexing Section

14.2.1.1 If the document type is 64124-1, then the document contains one SPL Indexing Data Elements section as above.

14.2.1.2 Value of effective time is same as value of effective time in document information.

14.2.2 Substance Indexing – Substance Identification

```
<section>
  <subject>

<identifiedSubstance>
  <id extension="P88XT4IS4D" root="2.16.840.1.113883.4.9"/>
  <identifiedSubstance>
    <code code="P88XT4IS4D" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.4.9"/>
    <name>paclitaxel</name>
```

Validation Procedures

14.2.2.1 There is one or more substance, the first being the main substance to be defined in this document, the following substances being locally defined and used for the definition of the main one.

14.2.2.2 There is one substance code.

14.2.2.3 If this substance is the main to be defined substance, then code system is 2.16.840.1.113883.4.9.

14.2.2.4 If this substance is the *not* the main to be defined substance, then code system is equal to the document id.

14.2.2.5 Code and code system are the same as the parent element id's extension and root respectively.

14.2.2.6 There may be one substance name.

14.2.2.7 If a substance indexing file with the same code has previously been submitted, then the name is not different.

14.2.2.8 The same substance is not described in a substance indexing document with a different set id.

14.2.2.9 There is no document with the same set id but a different substance.

14.2.3 Substance Name Detail

Every name, including the primary name, is described in detail in the substance name detail structure:

```
<identifiedSubstance>
  <identifiedSubstance>
    <asNamedEntity>
      <code code="C43707" displayName="primary name"
            codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"/>
      <name>alizapride</name>
```

Validation Procedures

14.2.3.1 If there is a name, then there is one or more name detail elements ("asNamedEntity")

14.2.3.2 Name detail has a code with code system 2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1 and code specifying the type of name as either "primary name" (C43707) or "display name" (C43682, sometimes called an alternative "listing name").

14.2.3.3 Name detail has a name element with the name.

14.2.4 Substance Code Mappings – Equivalence

Equivalence mappings declare that the substance is considered equivalent with another description of the substance in a different system.

```
<identifiedSubstance>
  <identifiedSubstance>

    <asEquivalentSubstance>
      <definingSubstance>
        <code code="5243513e-5938-b544-afa5-b6aadafe2ad0"
              codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.2705"/>
      </definingSubstance>
```

Validation Procedures

14.2.4.1 There is one or more equivalent substance references.

14.2.4.2 Reference has a code and code system.

14.2.4.3 One of the equivalent substance references is the definition hash code with code system 2.16.840.1.113883.3.2705.

14.2.4.4 Code consists of 32 hexadecimal digits in lower case grouped in 8-4-4-4-12 digits separated by hyphens.

14.2.4.5 Definition hash code is not associated with a different substance indexing set id.

14.2.4.6 If a prior version of this set id exists, the definition hash code is the same.

14.2.5 Structural Unit

The structure is associated with one moiety, where in HL7 the notion of “moiety” is used as defined by the IUPAC Gold Book, which is the authority of international chemical nomenclature, and can be paraphrased as any sub-structure of the compound. We may also paraphrase “moiety” for the purpose presented here as “structural unit”. As a matter of convention, every structural unit shall be presented in one moiety.

```
<identifiedSubstance>
  <!-- ... -->
  <identifiedSubstance>
    <!-- ... -->
```

```
    <moiety>
      <code code="C103243" displayName="mixture component"
            codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"/>
      <quantity>
        <numerator value="1" unit="1"/>
        <denominator value="1" unit="1"/>
      </quantity>
      <partMoiety>
        <code code="ABC123XYZ9" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.4.9"/>
      </partMoiety>

      <subjectOf>
        <characteristic>
          <code code="C103240" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
                displayName="Chemical Structure"/>
```

In simple chemicals that are defined based on a simple structure in a single structural unit, there would be no need to insert a <moiety> element to represent that structural unit separate from the substance itself. However, the advantage of this convention is that it leads to a uniformity of representation. All structurally defined substances have one or more structural units (moieties.)

The partMoiety element is often empty

```
<identifiedSubstance>
  <!-- ... -->
  <identifiedSubstance>
    <!-- ... -->

    <moiety>
      <code code="C103243" displayName="mixture component"
            codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"/>
      <quantity>
        <numerator value="2" unit="1"/>
        <denominator value="1" unit="1"/>
      </quantity>
      <partMoiety/>
```

except if the moiety itself is also defined as a substance of its own, which occurs if there is only one moiety which is then in fact the same thing as the entire identified substance:

```
<identifiedSubstance>
  <id extension="P88XT4IS4D" root="2.16.840.1.113883.4.9"/>
  <identifiedSubstance>
    <code code="P88XT4IS4D" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.4.9"/>
    <name>paclitaxel</name>

    <moiety>
      <quantity>
        <numerator value="1" unit="1"/>
        <denominator value="1" unit="1"/>
      </quantity>
      <partMoiety>
        <code code="P88XT4IS4D" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.4.9"/>
      </partMoiety>
```

Also note that in this case of only one structural unit, there is no moiety code “mixture component”.

Moieties may also occur nested in other moieties

```
<moiety>
  <partMoiety>
    <moiety>
```

Moieties have a quantity, with numerator and denominator specifying how much of the part moiety is in the substance.

```
<moiety>
  <quantity>
    <numerator value="1" unit="1"/>
    <denominator value="1" unit="1"/>
  </quantity>
  <partMoiety>
```

The moiety quantity can be by number of parts (unit="1"), or amount of substance (unit="mol"), or – sometimes – by mass (unit="g").

The numerator may be an uncertain range:

```
<moiety>
  <quantity>
    <numerator xsi:type="URG_PQ">
      <low value="1.25" unit="g" inclusive="false" />
      <high value="1.75" unit="g" />
    </numerator>
    <denominator value="1" unit="1"/>
  </quantity>
  <partMoiety>
```

Validation Procedures

14.2.5.1 There may be one or more moieties

14.2.5.2 If this is a nested moiety, then there is a code

14.2.5.3 Code system is 2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1

14.2.5.4 Code comes from the moiety role code list.

14.2.5.5 There is a quantity with numerator and denominator, except if the moiety role code is *Structural Modification* (C118425).

14.2.5.6 Numerator and denominator have the same units

14.2.5.7 Unit is one of 1, mol, or g.

14.2.5.8 If the moiety role code is *Protein Subunit* (C118424), then the unit is 1 or mol, but not g.

14.2.5.9 If the denominator unit is 1, then the denominator value is 1.

14.2.5.10 There is a partMoiety element:

14.2.5.11 If there is an id for document internal references, then the root is equal to the document id root.

14.2.5.12 If there is a code and any modifying properties (e.g. bonds), then there is an id differentiating this moiety from its kind specified by the code.

14.2.5.13 If this is the only moiety of the main substance, then there is a UNII code (code system 2.16.840.1.113883.4.9) that is the same as that substance:

14.2.5.14 There can be a code referencing a auxiliary substance, locally defined in this document.

```
<partMoiety>
  <id extension="SU1" root="Document Id" />
  <code code="KAPPA-CHAIN" codeSystem="Document Id" />
```

14.2.5.15 Code system of locally defined codes is the document id root.

14.2.5.16 Locally defined code is defined as the id of an auxiliary substance in this document.

14.2.5.17 There is no name.

14.2.5.18 Structural units have no other characteristics than *Chemical Structure* (C103240) and .*Stereochemistry* (C18188)

14.2.6 Chemical Structure

Chemical structure is described as a characteristic of the structural unit and represented as MOLFILE and InChi, or alternatively Amino Acid Sequence.

```
<identifiedSubstance>
  <identifiedSubstance>
    <moiety>
      <partMoiety><!-- Moiety Details --></partMoiety>
      <subjectOf>
        <characteristic>
          <code code="C103240" displayName="Chemical Structure"
                codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"/>
          <value xsi:type="ED" mediaType="Structural Representation Type">
            <!-- Structural Representation -->
          </value>
```

Known structural representation types are:

Table 9: Structural Represnentation Type

Type	MIME Media Type
InCHI	application/x-inchi
MOLFILE	application/x-mdl-molfile
SMILES	application/x-smiles
CHIME	application/x-mdl-chime
Amino Acid Letter Sequence	application/x-aa-seq
DNA Sequence	application/x-dna-seq
RNA Sequence	application/x-rna-seq

For example, MOLFILE data is conveyed as follows:

```
    <moiety>
      <partMoiety><!-- Moiety Details --></partMoiety>
      <subjectOf>
        <characteristic>
          <code code="C103240" displayName="Chemical Structure"
                codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"/>
          <value xsi:type="ED"
                 mediaType="application/x-mdl-molfile">


38 38  0     1  0  0  0  0  0999 V2000
    4.2690    1.2220    0.0000 O   0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0
    5.1350   -3.2780    0.0000 O   0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0
    2.5369   -1.7780    0.0000 O   0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0
    6.0010    2.2220    0.0000 N   0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0
    6.8671    2.7220    0.0000 C   0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0
    6.0010    1.2220    0.0000 C   0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0
    5.1350    0.7220    0.0000 C   0  0  3  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0
  ...
  1  7  1  0  0  0  0
  1 33  1  0  0  0  0
  2 15  1  0  0  0  0
  2 37  1  0  0  0  0
  3 17  1  0  0  0  0
  ...
M  END</value>
```

InChi representation is conveyed as:

```
    <moiety>
      <partMoiety><!-- Moiety Details --></partMoiety>
      <subjectOf>
        <characteristic>
          <code code="C103240" displayName="Chemical Structure"
                codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"/>
          <value xsi:type="ED"
                 mediaType="application/x-inchi">
          </value>
```

and InChi Key:

```
    <moiety>
      <partMoiety><!-- Moiety Details --></partMoiety>
      <subjectOf>j
        <characteristic>
          <code code="C103240" displayName="Chemical Structure"
                codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"/>
          <value xsi:type="ED"</value>
```

An alternative, more compact way of describing chemical structure, where appropriate, is the Amino Acid Sequence.

```
<identifiedSubstance>
  <identifiedSubstance>
    <moiety>
      <code code="C118424" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
            displayName="PROTEIN SUBUNIT"/>
      <partMoiety><!-- Moiety Details --></partMoiety>
      <subjectOf>
        <characteristic>
          <code code="C13187" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
                displayName="AMINO ACID SEQUENCE"/>
          <value xsi:type="ED" mediaType="application/x-aa-seq">
          </value>
```

Validation Procedures

14.2.6.1 There are one or more structure representations or sub-moieties.

14.2.6.2 Code for structure representation is C103240 and code system is 2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1.

14.2.6.3 There is a value is of type ED with media type.

14.2.6.4 Media type is in “application/x-mdl-molfile”, “application/x-smiles”, “application/x-inchi” or “application/x-inchi-key” or “application/x-aa-seq”.

14.2.6.5 Value contains text formatted according to the declared structure representation.

14.2.6.6 If value media type is application/x-aa-seq, then the value consists of the amino acid letters (capitals for the L-configuration and lower case for the D-configuration), including the letter X for a wildcard, and any whitespace character for visual grouping.

Table 10: Amino Acid Letter Codes

Code	Amino acid	Code	Amino acid
A	alanine	I	isoleucine
R	arginine	L	leucine
N	asparagine	K	lysine
D	aspartic acid	M	methionine
B	asparagine or aspartic acid	F	phenylalanine
C	cysteine	P	proline
E	glutamic acid	S	serine
Q	glutamine	T	threonine
Z	glutamine or glutamic acid	W	tryptophan
G	glycine	Y	tyrosine
H	histidine	V	valine
X	(placeholder)		

14.2.7 Stereochemistry structure

```
<moiety>
  <partMoiety><!-- Moiety Details --></partMoiety>
  <subjectOf>
    <characteristic>
      <code code="" displayName="Stereochemistry Type"
            codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"/>
      <value xsi:type="CV" code="C103211"
             displayName="SQUARE PLANAR 1"
             codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"/>
```

Validation Procedures

14.2.7.1 Code for stereochemistry structure is C18188 and code system is 2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1.

14.2.7.2 There is a coded value (type CV).

14.2.7.3 Value code system is 2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1.

14.2.7.4 Value comes from the Stereochemistry Type Code list.

14.2.7.5 There is no more than one stereochemistry specification per moiety.

14.2.7.6 If Stereochemistry specification characteristic is present, then the moiety must have characteristic "Chemical Structure".

14.2.7.7 If Stereochemistry specification characteristic is present, then the moiety does not have nested moieties.

14.2.8 Optical Activity

When stereochemistry can not be specified specifically in the Chemical Structure, the Optical Activity may be specified for the overall substance as follows:

```
<identifiedSubstance>
  <identifiedSubstance> ... </identifiedSubstance>
  <subjectOf>
    <characteristic>
      <code code="C103201" displayName="Optical Activity"
            codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"/>
      <value xsi:type="CV" code="C103202"
             displayName="plus"
             codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"/>
```

Validation Procedures

14.2.8.1 Code for optical activity is C103201 and code system is 2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1.

14.2.8.2 There is a coded value (type CV).

14.2.8.3 Value code system is 2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1.

14.2.8.4 Value code is “C103202” (plus), “C103203” (minus), or “C103204” (plus/minus).

14.2.9 Irregular Amino Acids for Substitutions

All post translational modifications and other variances from the closest amino acid sequence are specified by means of amino acid substitutions.

In an amino acid substitution one regular amino acid is replaced by an irregular amino acid, or any molecule that fits into the amino acid chain. Such a molecule must be defined by a chemical structure and amino acid connection points. This means, usually, one amino-group must be marked to substitute the amino group of the original amino acid, and one carboxyl group must be defined to substitute the carboxyl group of the original amino acid. However other configurations are possible.

Terminal substitutions may only need one amino acid connection point, a carboxyl group for N-terminal and an amino group for C-terminal substitutions.

There may be more than two amino acid connection points to provide for cross-links between chains or sections of one chain. Most importantly the disulfide bridge,

wherein two cystein (C) amino acids are replaced by one shared cystin integrated in both chains.

The cystin, for example, would bedefined as an auxiliary locally defined substance with amino acid connection points as follows:

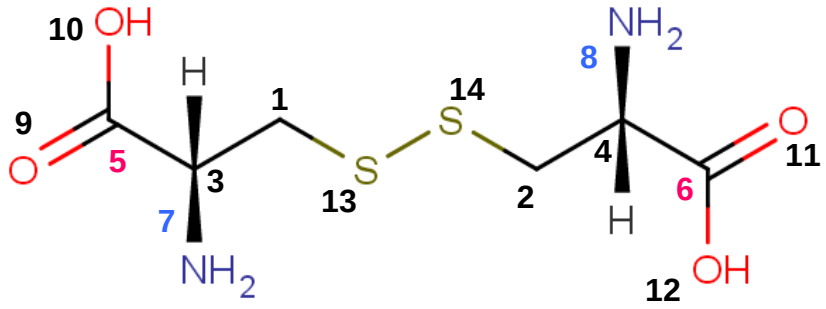
```
<subject>
  <identifiedSubstance>
    <id extension="cys-cys" root="Document Id"/>
    <identifiedSubstance>
      <id extension="cys-cys" root="Document Id"/>
      <code code="48TCX9A1VT" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.4.9"/>

      <moiety>
        <quantity>
          <numerator value="1" unit="mol" />
          <denominator value="1" unit="mol" />
        </quantity>
        <partMoiety>
          <code code="48TCX9A1VT" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.4.9"/>
        </partMoiety>
        <subjectOf>
          <characteristic>
            <code code="C103240" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
                  displayName="Chemical Structure"/>
            <value></value>
          </characteristic>
        </subjectOf>

        <subjectOf>
          <characteristic>
            <code code="C103240" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
                  displayName="Chemical Structure InChI"/>
            <value></value>
          </characteristic>
        </subjectOf>

        <subjectOf>
          <characteristic>
            <code code="C103240" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
                  displayName="Chemical Structure InChIKey"/>
            <value></value>
          </characteristic>
        </subjectOf>
```

This represents the following molecule, which after InChi normalization has the atoms sufficiently uniquely numbered:



Based on these canonical InChi atom numbers, we can define the amino acid connection points the carboxyl group at C 5 with the amino group at N 7, and the carboxyl group at C 6 with the amino agroup and N 8:

```
      <moiety>
        <code code="C118427" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
              displayName="AMINO ACID CONNECTION POINTS"/>
        <positionNumber value="7"/>
        <positionNumber value="5"/>
        <partMoiety>
          <id extension="cys-cys1" root="Document Id"/>
        </partMoiety>
      </moiety>

      <moiety>
        <code code="C118427" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
              displayName="AMINO ACID CONNECTION POINTS"/>
        <positionNumber value="8"/>
        <positionNumber value="6"/>
        <partMoiety>
          <id extension="cys-cys1" root="Document Id"/>
        </partMoiety>
      </moiety>
```

This completes the definition of a cystin disulfide bridge, which now can be re-used many times to indicate various disulfide bridges.

The amino acid connection points must be sorted by ascending first position number, and, if the first position number is not applicable, the second position number.

Validation Procedures

14.2.9.1 Code for amino acid connection point moiety is C118427 and code system is 2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1.

14.2.9.2 There is a preceding moiety which is the structural unit

14.2.9.3 There are two position number elements referencing InChi canonicalized atom numbers, the first stands for the amino group, the second for the carboxyl group.

14.2.9.4 At least one of the two position number elements has an integer number value, i.e., at least either an amino group or a carboxyl group is specified.

14.2.9.5 If the structure is not intended to have an amino group or a carboxyl group, then the respective position number has no value but a nullFlavor attribute set to “NA” (i.e., not applicable).

14.2.9.6 The first position number is greater than the first position number of the preceding amino acid connection point moiety, if any.

14.2.9.7 If the first position number is not applicable, then the first position number of the preceding amino acid connection point moiety, if any, is also not applicable.

14.2.9.8 If the first position number is not applicable, then the first position number of the preceding amino acid connection point moiety, if any, is also not applicable, and the second position number is greater than the preceding one’s.

14.2.9.9 The InChI formula has at least one amino group (N), except if the first position number does not have a number value.

14.2.9.10 The InChI formula has at least one carboxyl group (C), except if the second position number does not have a number value.

14.2.9.11 The first position number references an amino group (N).

14.2.9.12 The second position number references a carboxyl group (C).

14.2.10 Amino Acid Substitutions

All post translational modifications and other variances from the closest amino acid sequence are specified by means of amino acid substitutions.In an amino acid substitution one regular amino acid is replaced by an irregular amino acid, or any molecule that fits into the amino acid chain. When such a molecule is defined as an auxiliary substance identified locally in this document, it can be referenced by actual amino acid substitutions.

Amino acid substitutions are specified as moieties of code “structural modification” (C118425). The moiety subatnce (partMoiety) is referenced by the code element (e.g., “cys-cys” in the example below) which must cite an auxillary substance locally defined in the document (see Section 14.2.11), with the appropriately matching amino acid connection point moieties specified. All amino acid substitutions must also have their own unique id (e.g. here “BR1” in the example below).

```
<moiety>
  <code code="C118425" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
        displayName="STRUCTURAL MODIFICATION" />
  <partMoiety>
    <id extension="BR1" root="Document Id"/>
    <code code="cys-cys" codeSystem="Document Id"
          displayName="Cysteine disulfide"/>

    <bond>
      <code code="C118426" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
            displayName="AMINO ACID SUBSTITUTION POINT"/>
      <positionNumber value="1"/>
      <positionNumber value="53"/>
      <distalMoiety>
        <id extension="SU1" root="00da913b-e2fd-454b-9dd2-c2d8b2e719af" />
      </distalMoiety>
    </bond>

    <bond>
      <code code="C118426" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
            displayName="AMINO ACID SUBSTITUTION POINT"/>
      <positionNumber value="2" />
      <positionNumber value="62" />
      <distalMoiety>
        <id extension="SU1" root="00da913b-e2fd-454b-9dd2-c2d8b2e719af"/>
      </distalMoiety>
    </bond>
```

The bond element connect the irregular amino acid to the correct position on the specified protein subunit (e.g., “SU1” in above example). Each substitution is specified with one bond. In the case of bridges between two chains (or two regions of the same chain), there are two bond elements, one for each side of the bridge.

Validation Procedures

14.2.10.1 Code for amino acid substitution moiety is C118425 and code system is 2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1.

14.2.10.2 There is a part moiety element, representing the irregular amino acid.

14.2.10.3 There is an id with root being the document id.

14.2.10.4 Id is unique in the entire document.

14.2.10.5 There is a code referencing an auxiliary substance defined locally in this document.

14.2.10.6 There are two position number elements.

14.2.10.7 First position number references an amino acid connection point of the auxiliary substance.

14.2.10.8 There is a distal moiety element with an id locally defined in the document, i.e., the id root is the document it.

14.2.10.9 Distal moiety id references a protein subunit by its identifier locally defined in a preceding moiety.

14.2.10.10 Second position number references an amino acid position on the referenced protein subunit.

14.2.10.11 There is one or more amino acid substitution bond element.

14.2.11 Authority Citation for Organisms

If the substance is an organism, e.g., a botanical, microorganism, animal, or virus, such organism is defined by its authority citation.

```
<identifiedSubstance>
  <id extension="3R2AD49R6T" root="2.16.840.1.113883.4.9" />
  <identifiedSubstance>
    <code code="3R2AD49R6T" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.4.9" />
    ...
  </identifiedSubstance>
  <subjectOf>
    <document>
      <bibliographicDesignationText>Drimia indica (Roxb.)
Jessop</bibliographicDesignationText>
    </document>
  </subjectOf>
</identifiedSubstance>
```

Validation Procedures

14.2.11.1 There is one bibliographic designation text:

14.2.11.2 Bibliographic designation text is a simple string

14.2.11.3 There are no other elements besides bibliographic designation text

15 Indexing - Product Concept

15.1 Header

15.1.1 Document type

```
<document>
   <code code="73815-3" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
         displayName="Indexing - Product Concept"/>
```

Validation Procedures

15.1.1.1 Document code is as above

15.1.1.2 If a document with the same set id has been previously submitted, then it is of the same type.

15.1.2 Author information

Product concept indexing is maintained by FDA:

```
<author>
  <time/>
  <assignedEntity>
    <representedOrganization>
      <id root="1.3.6.1.4.1.519.1" extension="927645523"/>
      <name>Food and Drug Administration</name>
```

15.1.2.1 Author information for Product Concept indexing is as one of the above

15.1.3 Reference Labeling

The information about a product concept is derived from Reference Labeling. The Reference Labeling is found in the SPL document submitted by the innovator, or, if the innovator has stopped marketing the product, by a designated generic manufacturer. The SPL document containing the Reference Labeling is specified using its setId as follows:

```
<document>
  ...
  <author .../>

  <relatedDocument typeCode="DRIV">
    <relatedDocument>
      <setId root="20d9b74e-e3d8-4511-9df9-cec2087372fc"/>
    </relatedDocument>
  </relatedDocument>

  <component .../>
</document>
```

Validation Procedures

15.1.3.1 There is reference labeling specified.

15.1.3.2 Type code attribute is as above.

15.1.3.3 There is no document id

15.1.3.4 There is a set id

15.1.3.5 Set id is a GUID

15.1.3.6 Reference labeling set id is the set id of a drug listing document.

15.1.3.7 If a product concept indexing file for the same reference labeling set id has been previously submitted, then it is a prior version of this indexing document with the same set id.

15.1.3.8 If a document with the same set id has been previously submitted, then it is associated with the same reference labeling set id.

15.2 Body

```
<section>
  <id root="ffabedf9-6bde-4787-beb0-abd214307427"/>
  <code code="48779-3" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
        displayName="SPL Indexing Data Elements Section"/>
    <title/>
    <text/>
    <effectiveTime value="20101007"/>
    <subject>
```

15.2.1 Product Concept Indexing Section

15.2.1.1 If the document type is 73815-3, “Indexing - Product Concept"’, then the document contains one SPL Indexing Data Elements section as above.

15.2.1.2 There is one or more product

15.2.2 Abstract Product/Part Concept

The Abstract Product Concept is based on the level 4 Pharmaceutical Product Identifier defined as a dose form with its active ingredients and strengths.

```
<section>
  <subject>
    <manufacturedProduct>
      <manufacturedProduct>
        <code code="ba328d9b-c64c-fca9-2ee7-9882d2ac3f32"
              codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.3389" />
        <formCode code="C42916" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
                  displayName="CAPSULE, EXTENDED RELEASE" />
```

Validation Procedures

15.2.2.1 There is a product concept code with code system 2.16.840.1.113883.3.3389.

15.2.2.2 Code has the format of 8-4-4-4-12 hexadecimal digits where letter digits are lower case.

15.2.2.3 Code value matches the specified properties according to the Abstract Product Concept Code Specification (See 15.2.4).

15.2.2.4 There is a form code and it comes from the Product Concept Dosage Form List

15.2.3 Ingredient

```
<ingredient classCode="ACTIM, ACTIB, or ACTIR">
  <quantity>
     <numerator value="10" unit="mg"/>
     <denominator value="1" unit="1"/>
  </quantity>
  <ingredientSubstance>
     <code code="1234567890" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.4.9"/>
     <name>tazminate malate</name>
     <activeMoiety>
       <activeMoiety>
         <code code="76I7G6D29C" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.4.9" />
         <name>MORPHINE</name>
       </activeMoiety>
     </activeMoiety>
   </ingredientSubstance>
</ingredient>
```

Validation Procedures

15.2.3.1 If the ingredient's basis of strength is the active moiety (class code is "ACTIM"), then one (and only one) active moiety, the actual basis of strength, is stated.

15.2.3.2 Active moiety has an active moiety UNII code.

15.2.3.3 If the ingredient's basis of strength is a reference substance (class code is "ACTIR"), then that reference substance is specified.

15.2.3.4 If the ingredient has a basis of strength other then the reference substance, then there is no reference substance.

15.2.3.5 Reference substance has an ingredient UNII code.

15.2.4 Abstract Product Concept Code Specification

The product concept code is created by computing the MD5 digest over a data structure describing the concept code unambiguously and uniquely, i.e., the same product concept is described by this and only this descriptor, and hence, by this and only this hash code. MD5 hash codes are 128 bit (16 byte) number which, in

hexadecimal presentation, is 32 digits long. The hexadecimal digits are formatted in groups of 8-4-4-12 digits separated by hyphens.

The data structure which is the input of the MD5 digest is a pipe-delimited sequence of form code (dose form) by NCI thesaurus code only, followed by the active ingredients separated by the "pipe delimiter" ("|") in alphabetic order of their UNII code. Each active ingredient is represented by the active ingredient code and the strength.

The dosage form code may be more generalized than the dosage form used in the SPL Listing documents. For example, "powder for solution" the code is generalized to "for solution". Some of these more abstract dosage form codes may not be included in the dosage form table that can be chosen for drug listing submissions. For instance, POWDER, FOR SUSPENSION (C42975) is generalized to FOR SUSPENSION (C42972). The mapping between the dosage forms can be found in the Product Concept Dosage Form list on the FDA web page.

When the basis of strength is the active moiety (ingredient/@classCodde = 'ACTIM') and the active moiety UNII is different from the active ingredient UNII, then the active moiety UNII is appended to the active ingredient UNII with a separating tilde ("~") character. Likewise, if the basis of strength is a reference substance, (ingredient/@classCodde = 'ACTIR'), then the active moiety UNII is appended to the active ingredient UNII with a separating tilde ("~") character.

The strength expression must be normalized to account for the fact that 10 mg in 5 mL are the same as 2 mg in 1 mL, and 1 g is the same as 1000 mg and appended with a pipe delimiter.

Example 1: Cefutoxime Axetil (Z49QDT0J8Z) powder for suspension (C42975) 125 mg of Cefutoxime (moiety, O1R9FJ93ED) in 5 mL is put together as "**`C42972|Z49QDT0J8Z~O1R9FJ93ED|2.500e1 mg/mL`**", for which the MD5 digest is "7fead104-1147-b435-1545-606b40a2cd6b".

Exmaple 2: Trimetoprim (AN164J8Y0X) 160 mg and Sulfametoxazole (JE42381TNV) 800 mg tablet (C42998). is put together as: "**`C42998|AN164J8Y0X|160e-3 g|JE42381TNV|8.000e2 mg`**", for which the MD5 digest is "8663a93b-5627-7466-306d-fd794b7d268a".

The normalized strength is computed by (1) normalizing the units by scaling the numbers, (2) dividing the normalized strength numerator by the normalized denominator, and (3) writing out the normalized strength number and the combined unit.

The normalized unit for both numerator and denominator, and their factor is determined by the following 3 step algorithm: (1) if the unit is "1" the factor is 1 and

the normalized unit symbol is the empty string; or (2) find the unit in the Table 13: Normalized Units; or (3) if the unit is entirely embraced in square brackets "[...]", the factor is 1 and the normalized unit is unchanged.

Table 11: Normalized Units

Unit	Kind of Quantity	Factor	Normalized Unit
mmol	amount of substance	1	mmol
nmol	amount of substance	10^{-3}	mmol
meq	amount of valence	1	meq
cm2	Area	1	cm2
d	elapsed time	86400	s
h	elapsed time	3600	s
min	elapsed time	60	s
U	katalytic activity	1	U
g	Mass	10^{3}	mg
kg	Mass	10^{6}	mg
mg	Mass	1	mg
ng	Mass	10^{-6}	mg
ug	Mass	10^{-3}	mg
Ci	Radioactivity	37 10^{3}	MBq
mCi	Radioactivity	37	MBq
L	Volume	10^{3}	mL
mL	Volume	1	mL
uL	Volume	10^{-3}	mL

All units which are entirely enclosed in in brackets are represented as is with the trivial conversion factor 1.

With this the normalized strength value is computed as:

(normalized strength number) =
(strength numerator number) × (conversion factor of numerator unit)
÷ (strength denominator number) × (conversion factor of denominator unit)

In this example 125 mg in 5 mL, this is trivial because the conversion factors are 1.

(strength numberator number) = 125
(conversion factor of numerator unit mg) = 1
(strength denominator number) = 5
(conversion factor of denominator unit mL) = 1

(normalized strength number) =
125 × 1
÷ 5 × 1 = 25.

If the strength had been written as 125 g in 5 L, the calculation would be:

(strength numberator number) = 125
(conversion factor of numerator unit g) = 1000
(strength denominator number) = 5
(conversion factor of denominator unit L) = 1000

(normalized strength number) =

$$\frac{125}{5} \times \frac{1000}{1000} = 25$$

Finally, the combined normalized strength unit is written in the scientific notation in the format “-0.000e-9”, where “-0.000” means the 4 digits with an optional negative sign and the decimal point always in the same position, “e” (lower case) is the exponent marker, verbatim as a lower case “e”, and “-9” is the exponent to base 10, with the optional negative sign followed by however many digits are required, but no zero padding. Examples 25 is formatted as “2.500e1”, 0.3766667 as “3.767e-1”, and 250×10^{10} as “2.500e12.

The normalized formatted strength number is followed by a space and then the normalized numerator unit, followed by a solidus (or “forward slash”, “/”) and the normalized denominator unit. For example, “mg” in “mL” becomes “mg/mL”). If the normalized denominator unit symbol is the empty string (i.e., the denominator unit was “1”), no solidus is appended (e.g., “mg” and the empty string becomes “mg”, not “mg/” nor “mg/1”). No attempt at canceling numerator and denominator units is made (e.g., “mg/mg” stays unchanged and is not reduced to 1.)

15.2.5 Abstract Kit Concept Code Specification

The product kit concept code is created by computing the MD5 digest over a data structure describing the concept code unambiguously and uniquely. The format of kit concept code is same as that of product concept code expalined in section 15.2.4

If the form code is "kit" (C47916), the input of the MD5 digest is a pipe-delimited sequence of form code (kit) followed by the product concept code and quantity of the part in alphabetic order of the code.

The quantity of the part must be normalized to account for the fact that 1 g is the same as 1000 mg.
Here the denominator value for part quantity will be always 1 hence the normalized unit for numerator, and its factor is determined as expalined in above section 15.2.4.

Exmaple: "C47916|a46c150b-8203-ac62-31ef-adb5c0aca5a2|1.680e1 mL|bdce178d-00b2-6beb-4d96-259f444aee1d|9.000e2 mg"
MD5 digest is “a76b62f9-257b-7918-620e-4db706c928f8”.

15.2.6 Application Product/Kit Concept

The Application Product Concept includes the marketing application identifier in addition to the dose form with its active ingredients and strengths.

```
<subject>
  <manufacturedProduct>
    <manufacturedProduct>
      <code code="d5ecf7af-bb51-2003-61fe-b81973321293"
            codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.3389"/>
      <asEquivalentEntity classCode="EQUIV">
        <code code="A" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.2964"/>
        <definingMaterialKind>
          <code code="41b5afb1-84d4-83c3-f095-5557b06994a0"
                codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.3389"/>
        </definingMaterialKind>
      </asEquivalentEntity>
```

Validation Procedures

15.2.6.1 There is an product/kit concept code with code system 2.16.840.1.113883.3.3389

15.2.6.2 Code has the format of 8-4-4-4-12 hexadecimal digits where letter digits are lower case.

15.2.6.3 Code value matches the specified properties according to the Application Product Concept Code Specification (See 15.2.8).

15.2.6.4 There is no form code.

15.2.6.5 There is an equivalent product reference.

15.2.6.6 There is an equivalence code with code system 2.16.840.1.113883.3.2964.

15.2.6.7 Equivalence code is “A”, “B”, “OTC”, or “N”.

15.2.6.8 There is a product/kit concept reference with code and code system same as another product/kit concept code of an Abstract or Application Product Concept in the same document.

15.2.7 Marketing Category and Application Number

```
<subject>
    <manufacturedProduct>
        <manufacturedProduct>
          <asEquivalentEntity> ... </asEquivalentEntity>
        </manufacturedProduct>
        <subjectOf>
            <approval>
            <id extension="NDA021223" root="2.16.840.1.113883.3.150" />
            <code code="C73594" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
displayName="NDA" />
             <author>
                 <territorialAuthority>
                    <territory>
                    <code code="USA" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.28" />
                    </territory>
                 </territorialAuthority>
             </author>
            </approval>
         </subjectOf>
       </manufacturedProduct>
   </subject>
```

Validation Procedures

15.2.7.1 There is one marketing category for every Product Equivalence

15.2.7.2 The marketing authorization should only be ANDA, BLA or NDA

15.2.8 Application Product/Kit Concept Code Specification

The Application Product Concept code is created by computing the MD5 digest over a data structure describing the Application Product concept code unambiguously and uniquely, i.e., the same equivalent product concept is described by this and only this descriptor, and hence, by this and only this hash code. MD5 hash codes are 128 bit (16 byte) number which, in hexadecimal presentation, is 32 digits long. The hexadecimal digits are formatted in in groups of 8-4-4-12 digits separated by hyphens.

The data structure which is the input of the MD5 digest is a pipe-delimited sequence of abstract product concept code and the application number separated by the “pipe delimiter” (“|”).

Example 1: Cefutoxime Axetil (Z49QDT0J8Z) powder for suspension (C42975) 125 mg of Cefutoxime (moiety, O1R9FJ93ED) in 5 mL is put together as “**`C42972|Z49QDT0J8Z~O1R9FJ93ED|2.500e1 mg/mL`**”, for which the MD5 digest is “7fead104-1147-b435-1545-606b40a2cd6b”. That is the abstract product concept.

Example 1a: GlaxoSmithKline’s CEFTIM powder for suspension for 125 mg in 5 mL has the application number NDA050672, so its Applicaiton Product Concept is the

MD5 hash of “**7fead104-1147-b435-1545-606b40a2cd6b|NDA050672**” which is “3b35d65f-9dc2-104c-e6be-8df3d2dfb11d”.

Example 1b: Cefutoxime Axetil by Choice Pharma LLC for suspension for 125 mg in 5 mL may have the application number ANDA987654, so its Application Product Concept is the MD5 hash of “**7fead104-1147-b435-1545-606b40a2cd6b|ANDA987654**” which is “08007c2a-e9e4-0427-ea61-4d8197b2ef24”.

Below is the example for Application Kit concept code.
Exmaple 2: For abstrct product kit concept, MD5 digest is sequence of form code (kit) followed by the product concept code and quantity of the part in alphabetic order of the code.
So MD5 digest of "C47916|a46c150b-8203-ac62-31ef-adb5c0aca5a2|1.680e1 mL|bdce178d-00b2-6beb-4d96-259f444aee1d|9.000e2 mg" is “a76b62f9-257b-7918-620e-4db706c928f8”, which is the abstract product kit concept code.

Example 2a: For application number BLA456789, Applicaiton Product Kit Concept is the MD5 hash of “**a76b62f9-257b-7918-620e-4db706c928f8|BLA456789**” which is “a071563f-e74e-a06c-33c2-2c4aeec1b950”.

Note: the concept hash code for an Application Product Concept is always formed from the Abstract Product Concept and the application number despite the fact that the ANDA equivalent product references the referenced product as its equivalent. The Application Product Concept however is independent of the choice of equivalence product only dependent on the Abstract Product Concept and the application number.

16 Lot Distribution Report

16.1 SPL Header

16.1.1 Document type

```
<document>
  <id root="50606941-3e5d-465c-b4e0-0f5a19eb41d4"/>
  <code code="66105-8" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
        displayName="Lot Distribution Data"/>
  <effectiveTime value="2010701"/>
  <setId root="a30accef-f437-4136-808c-9ed4ada5fcf8"/>
  <versionNumber value=“1”/>
```

Validation Procedures

16.1.1.1 Document code is as above

16.1.1.2 If a document with the same set id has been previously submitted, then it is of the same type.

16.1.2 Author information

```
<author>
  <representedOrganization>
    <id extension="DUNS Number" root="1.3.6.1.4.1.519.1"/>
    <id extension="Manufacturer License Number"
root="1.3.6.1.4.1.32366.1.3.1.2"/>
    <name>Zwerg Pharma, Inc.</name>

    <contactParty>
      <telecom value="mailto:Bob.Jones@acme.com"/>
      <contactPerson>
        <name/>
      </contactPerson>
    </contactParty>
```

16.1.2.1 There is one author (labeler)

16.1.2.2 There are two ids

16.1.2.3 One id is the DUNS number with the root 1.3.6.1.4.1.519.1 with a 9-digit extension

16.1.2.4 One id is the manufacturer license number with the root 1.3.6.1.4.1.32366.1.3.1.2 with a 4-digit extension

16.1.2.5 There may be one contact party (see the Procedures for contact party above)

16.1.2.6 Contact party has an email address specified.

16.1.3 Bulk-Lot Manufacturers

The manufacturing establishments which will be referred to in the bulk lot suppliers are listed here.

```
<document>
   <author>
      <assignedEntity>
         <representedOrganization> <!-- Labeler -->
            <assignedEntity>
               <assignedOrganization> <!-- Registrant -->

<assignedEntity><!-- Bulk-Lot Manufacturer 1 -->
   <confidentialityCode code="B" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.25"/>

   <assignedOrganization>  <!-- Establishment -->
      <id extension="1000000019" root="1.3.6.1.4.1.519.1"/>
      <name>Middleton Manufacturing company</name>
   </assignedOrganization>
</assignedEntity>

<assignedEntity><!-- Bulk-Lot Manufacturer 2 -->
  ...
```

Validation Procedures

16.1.3.1 There are one or more bulk lot manufacturers.

16.1.3.2 There is no registrant information.

16.1.3.3 Bulk-lot manufacturer has one id (the DUNS number) and a name as in Section 2.1.5.

16.1.3.4 Each bulk-lot manufacturer appears only once.

16.1.3.5 Bulk-lot manufacturer (“assignedOrganization”) has no other element besides id (the DUNS Number) and name.

16.1.3.6 The bulk-lot manufacturer id matches an establishment with same id (the DUNS Number) submitted in documents of type “establishment registration” in the same or previous calendar year

16.2 SPL Body

```
<component>
  <section>
     <id root="e13a985b-f706-a5c8-e8ef-73891eb1c697"/>
     <code  code="48780-1"
            codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
            displayName="SPL product data elements section"/>
     <effectiveTime>
       <low value="20100101"/>
       <high value="20100701" closed="false"/>
     </effectiveTime>
```

Validation Procedures

16.2.1.1 There is a document body

16.2.2 Data Elements Section

16.2.2.1 There is an SPL Data Elements section

16.2.2.2 Effective time has low and high boundaries indicating the reporting period of the lot distribution data (reporting start date, reporting end date).

16.2.2.3 Reporting start date has at least the precision of day in the format YYYYMMDD

16.2.2.4 Reporting end date has at least the precision of day in the format YYYYMMDD

16.2.2.5 Reporting start date is before reporting end date.

16.2.2.6 Reporting end date is the same as value of effective time in document information.

16.2.3 Product Data – Single Licensed Product

```
<section>
  <subject>
    <manufacturedProduct>
      <manufacturedProduct>
        <code code="1234-5678" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.69"/>
        <name>Multivax</name>
        <formCode code="C42973" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
                  displayName="POWDER, FOR SOLUTION"/>
        <ingredient classCode="ACTIB">
          <ingredientSubstance >
            <code code="KZ3L01D2PC" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.4.9"/>
            <name>HUMAN VIRUS ANTIGEN</name>
          </ingredientSubstance>
        </ingredient>

        <instanceOfKind>
          <!-- DISTRIBUTION DATA, SEE BELOW -->
        </instanceOfKind>
      </manufacturedProduct>
      <subjectOf>
        <approval>
          <id extension="BLA123456" root="2.16.840.1.113883.3.150"/>
          <code code="C73585" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
                displayName="BLA"/>
        </approval>
      </subjectOf>
      <consumedIn><!-- DOSING SPECIFICATION --></consumedIn>
    </manufacturedProduct>
  </subject>
</section>
```

16.2.3.1 There is one or more subject manufactured products:

16.2.3.2 There is an NDC product code

16.2.3.3 The general rules about the product item code apply as per 3.1.1.2ff.

16.2.3.4 There is a trade name

16.2.3.5 Name contains no special symbols (e.g., no “®” or “™” etc) and no “USP” or dosage forms.

16.2.3.6 Name matches the NDC code submitted in drug listings.

16.2.3.7 Dose form and active ingredients are specified, under parts if applicable.

16.2.3.8 There are no other product data elements, such as generic name, product source, inactive ingredients, etc.

16.2.3.9 The same product is not described in a lot distribution report with a different set id.

16.2.3.10 There is no lot distribution report with the same set id but a different product.

16.2.4 Dosing Specification

The dosing specification is used to compute the *number of doses* in any lot, or container, such as to comply with the *number of doses in fill lot/label lot* requirement specified by the regulation.

```
<section>
  <subject>
    <manufacturedProduct>
      <manufacturedProduct><!-- NDC AND NAME --></manufacturedProduct>
      <consumedIn>
        <substanceAdministration1 classCode="SBADM" moodCode="DEF">
          <routeCode  code="C38288" displayName="oral"
                      codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"/>
          <doseQuantity value="1" unit="mL"/>
        </substanceAdministration1>
      </consumedIn>
```

Validation Procedures

16.2.4.1 There is a dosing specification element.

16.2.4.2 There is a route code, and the rules for route of administration code apply (3.2.20.2f).

16.2.4.3 There is a dose quantity specification with a single value and unit, except for variable dose, which do not have the dose quantity element.

16.2.4.4 Value is a number

16.2.4.5 Unit comes from the *UCUM units of measures* list

16.2.5 Fill Lot

The fill lot is the lot of product which conforms to the specification of the product regardless of packaging, i.e., it has the form and the strength specified by the listing data for the package-independent NDC of the product. As such the fill lot is an instance of the product regardless of packaging.

```
<manufacturedProduct>
  <instanceOfKind>
    <productInstance><!-- FILL LOT -->
      <id root="{Fill Lot ID root OID}" extension="{Fill Lot ID}"/>
```

Validation Procedures

16.2.5.1 There is a fill lot element

16.2.5.2 The lot has an id with the following general rules for lot numbers:

16.2.5.3 There is an id extension with the reported alphanumeric lot number string

16.2.5.4 Lot number string can contain digits, upper case letters and the characters “-” and “/”.

16.2.5.5 There is a globally unique root OID

16.2.5.6 If the product item code is an NDC, then the globally unique root OID is formed by using the fixed prefix "1.3.6.1.4.1.32366.1.2.10." followed by the NDC product item code represented as a number without dashes and with initial zeroes from the labeler code segment removed (e.g., "0001-0123" becomes 10123).

16.2.5.7 If the product item code is an ISBT 128 code, then the globally unique root OID is formed by using the fixed prefix “1.3.6.1.4.1.32366.1.2.13.” followed by a decimal number value for the ISBT 128 facility identification number followed by a period “.” and a decimal number value for the ISBT 128 product code, both interpreted as a base 36 number with the digits 0-9 and A-Z, with the letter digits having the value of 9 added to the ordinal letter position (A: 1 + 9 = 10, B = 2 + 9 = 11, ..., Z = 26 + 9 = 35); e.g., ISBT 128 product item code “W0123-E0404” with facility identification number “W0123” interpreted in base 36: W = 23 + 9 = 32 × 36 + 0) × 36) + 1) × 36 + 2) × 36 + 3 = 53749083, and ISBT 128 product code “E0404” interpreted in base 36: E = 5 + 9 = 14 × 36 + 0) × 36 + 4) × 36 + 0) × 36 + 4 = 23519812, resulting in “1.3.6.1.4.1.32366.1.2.13.53749083.23519812”.

16.2.6 Bulk Lot(s)

Bulk lot is the instance of raw material that goes into one or more fill lots at possibly different strengths. As such the bulk lot represents one or more ingredient instances.

```
<manufacturedProduct>
  <instanceOfKind>
    <productInstance><!-- FILL LOT -->
```

```
<ingredient><!-- BULK LOT(S) -->
  <ingredientProductInstance>
    <id root="{Bulk Lot ID root OID}" extension="{Bulk Lot ID}"/>
    <asInstanceOfKind>
      <kindOfMaterialKind>
        <code code="XYZ123ABC" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.4.9"/>
        <name>Mucinella Bobadis Antigen</name>
      </kindOfMaterialKind>
    </asInstanceOfKind>
  </ingredientProductInstance>

  <subjectOf>
    <productEvent>
      <code code="C43360" displayName="manufacture"
            codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"/>
      <performer>
        <assignedEntity>
          <representedOrganization>
            <id root="1.3.6.1.4.1.519.1" extension="DUNS number"/>
```

Validation Procedures

16.2.6.1 There is one or more bulk lot elements

16.2.6.2 The lot has an id, and the general rules for lot numbers apply.

16.2.6.3 If the product item code is an NDC, then the globally unique root OID is formed by using the fixed prefix "1.3.6.1.4.1.32366.1.2.10." followed by the NDC Labeler Code represented as a number without initial zeroes (e.g., "0001" becomes 1).

16.2.6.4 If the product item code is an ISBT 128 code, then the globally unique root OID is formed by using the fixed prefix “1.3.6.1.4.1.32366.1.2.13.” followed by a decimal number value for the ISBT 128 facility identification number interpreted as a base 36 number with the digits 0-9 and A-Z, with the letter digits having the value of 9 added to the ordinal letter position (A: 1 + 9 = 10, B = 2 + 9 = 11, ..., Z = 26 + 9 = 35); e.g., ISBT 128 facility identification number “W0123” interpreted in base 36: W = 23 + 9 = 32 × 36 + 0) × 36) + 1) × 36 + 2) × 36 + 3 = 53749083, resulting in “1.3.6.1.4.1.32366.1.2.13.53749083”.

16.2.6.5 The bulk lot references an active ingredient

16.2.6.6 Code system is 2.16.840.1.113883.4.9

16.2.6.7 There is one ingredient name

16.2.6.8 Ingredient name matches the code

16.2.6.9 The ingredient is actually listed as an ingredient of the product

16.2.6.10 The bulk lot references one manufacturer (C43360).

16.2.6.11 There is one id

16.2.6.12 id is the DUNS number of the bulk lot manufacturing establishment with the root 1.3.6.1.4.1.519.1 and a 9-digit extension

16.2.6.13 Bulk-lot manufacturer (“representedOrganization”) has no other element besides id.

16.2.6.14 The bulk-lot manufacturer id is one of those listed in the bulk-lot manufacturers in the header.

16.2.6.15 The establishment id matches an establishment with same id submitted in documents of type “establishment registration” in the same or previous calendar year with business operation manufacture (C43360) or API manufacture (C82401).

16.2.6.16 The bulk lot references no other product activity

16.2.7 Label Lot(s) (Final Container Lot)

The label lot, or final container lot is the instance of the product, a portion of the fill lot that is portioned out into individual containers.

```
<manufacturedProduct>
  <instanceOfKind>
    <productInstance><!-- FILL LOT -->
      <ingredient><!-- BULK LOT(S) --></ingredient>
      <member><!-- LABEL LOT -->
        <memberProductInstance>
          <id root="{Label Lot ID root OID}" extension="{Label Lot ID}"/>
          <expirationTime>
            <high value="20110417"/>
          </expirationTime>
```

Validation Procedures

16.2.7.1 There is one or more label lot elements

16.2.7.2 The lot has an id, and the general rules for lot numbers apply.

16.2.7.3 If the product item code is an NDC, then the globally unique root OID is formed by using the fixed prefix "1.3.6.1.4.1.32366.1.2.10." followed by the full 10-digit NDC code represented as a number without dashes and with initial zeroes from the labeler code segment removed (e.g., "0001-0123-04" becomes 1012304).

16.2.7.4 If the product item code is an ISBT 128 code, then the globally unique root OID is formed by using the fixed prefix “1.3.6.1.4.1.32366.1.2.13.” followed by a decimal number value for the ISBT 128 facility identification number followed by a period “.” and a decimal number value for the ISBT 128 product code, both interpreted as a base 36 number with the digits 0-9 and A-Z, with the letter digits having the value of 9 added to the ordinal letter position (A: 1 + 9 = 10, B = 2 + 9 = 11, ..., Z = 26 + 9 = 35), and ending with a period “.” and the 3rd segment of the ISBT 128 package item code without leading zeroes; e.g., ISBT 128 product item code “W0123-E0404-03” with facility identification number “W0123” interpreted in base 36: W = 23 + 9 = 32 × 36 + 0) × 36) + 1) × 36 + 2) × 36 + 3 = 53749083, and ISBT 128 product code “E0404” interpreted in base 36: E = 5 + 9 = 14 × 36 + 0) × 36 + 4) × 36 + 0) × 36 + 4 = 23519812, and 3rd segment “03” without zeroes, resulting in “1.3.6.1.4.1.32366.1.2.13.53749083.23519812.3”.

16.2.7.5 There is an expiration time with a high boundary.

16.2.7.6 Expiration time has at least the precision of month in the format YYYYMM

16.2.8 Container Data Elements

```
<manufacturedProduct>
  <instanceOfKind>
    <productInstance><!-- FILL LOT -->
      <ingredient><!-- BULK LOT(S) --></ingredient>
      <member><!-- LABEL LOT -->
        <memberProductInstance>

<asContent>
  <quantity>
    <numerator value="2" unit="mL"/>
    <denominator value="1" unit="1"/>
  </quantity>
  <container>
    <code code="1234-5678-01" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.69"/>
    <formCode code="C43169" displayName="bottle"
              codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"/>
  </container>
```

Validation Procedures

16.2.8.1 There is a container reference

16.2.8.2 There is a quantity with a numerator and denominator

16.2.8.3 Numerator has a value greater than zero and a unit

16.2.8.4 Numerator unit matches the dosing specification unit.

16.2.8.5 Denominator has value 1 and either no unit or unit “1”

16.2.8.6 Quantity is the same as the package quantity of the product as described in the listing for the package NDC.

16.2.8.7 There is a container packaged product code

16.2.8.8 Container packaged product item code is an NDC or based on ISBT-128

16.2.8.9 There is a form code and display name

16.2.8.10 Code system for form code is 2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1

16.2.8.11 Display name matches form code

16.2.8.12 The container form code matches the form code specified for the container in the listing data.

16.2.9 Containers Distributed

```
<manufacturedProduct>
  <instanceOfKind>
    <productInstance><!-- FILL LOT -->
      <ingredient><!-- BULK LOT(S) --></ingredient>
      <member><!-- LABEL LOT -->
        <memberProductInstance>
          <asContent>
            <container><!-- container reference --></container>

<subjectOf>
  <quantity value="1000" unit="1"/>
  <productEvent>
    <code code="C106325"
          displayName="Distributed per reporting interval"
          codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"/>

    <effectiveTime>
      <low value="20100101"/>
    </effectiveTime>
  </productEvent>
</subjectOf>
```

Validation Procedures

16.2.9.1 There are one or more product events

16.2.9.2 There is one quantity (Final Containers Distributed)

16.2.9.3 Quantity value is the integer number of final containers distributed.

16.2.9.4 Quantity unit is “1” or there is no unit.

16.2.9.5 There is a product event code

16.2.9.6 Code system is 2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1

16.2.9.7 The code is from the LDD *Distribution Codes* list and display name matches the code.

16.2.9.8 There is one distribution product event

16.2.9.9 Container distribution event has an effective time with low boundary specifying the Initial Distribution Date.

16.2.9.10 Initial distribution date has at least the precision of day in the format YYYYMMDD

16.2.10 Containers Returned Data

```
<manufacturedProduct>
  <instanceOfKind>
    <productInstance><!-- FILL LOT -->
      <ingredient><!-- BULK LOT(S) --></ingredient>
      <member><!-- LABEL LOT -->
        <memberProductInstance>
          <asContent>
            <container><!-- container reference --></container>

<subjectOf>
  <quantity value="1000" unit="1"/>
  <productEvent>
    <code code="C106328"
          displayName="Returned"
          codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"/>
  </productEvent>
</subjectOf>
```

16.2.10.1 There is one returned product event

16.2.10.2 Returned product event has no effective time

16.2.10.3 There is no other product event

16.2.11 Product Data – Kit with Multiple Licensed Products

When the licensed product is only part of a kit, but the kit itself is not tracked as a “package lot”, the lot data is specified under the appropriate part of the kit, and all the validation procedures specified for fill lot, bulk lot and label lot apply as above.

```
<subject>
  <manufacturedProduct>
    <manufacturedProduct>
      <code code="1234-5679" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.69"/>
      <name p:de="Trade Name">Multivax (MixKit)</name>
      <part>
        <partProduct>
          <instanceOfKind>
            <productInstance>
```

If in addition the kit itself is tracked as a “package lot”, then the package lot data is specified for the entire kit as follows:

```
<subject>
  <manufacturedProduct>
    <manufacturedProduct>
      <code code="1234-5679" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.69"/>
      <name p:de="Trade Name">Multivax (MixKit)</name>
      <instanceOfKind>
        <productInstance><!-- PACKAGE LOT -->
          <id root="{Package Lot root OID}" extension="{Package Lot ID}"/>
          <part><!-- LABEL LOT -->
            <partProductInstance>
               <id root="{Label Lot root OID}" extension="{Label Lot ID}"/>
            </partProductInstance>
          </part>
        </productInstance>
        <subjectOf><!-- product events --></subjectOf>
      </instanceOfKind>
```

Validation Procedures

16.2.11.1 The rules for product code and name are as for simple products

16.2.11.2 There is one or more parts, referencing label lots of these parts.

16.2.11.3 There is a product event code

16.2.11.4 There is a label lot specified elsewhere in the lot distribution report.

16.2.11.5 There are one or more product events

16.2.11.6 There is one distribution product event

16.2.11.7 There may be one returned product event

16.2.11.8 There is no other product event

17 Wholesale Drug Distributor/Third-Party Logistics Facility Report

Wholesale Drug Distribution submissions have only header information with data for one or more reported facilities.

17.1 Header

17.1.1 Document type

```
<document>
   <code  code="75030-7"
          codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
          displayName="wholesale drug distributor/third-party logistics
facility reporter"/>
```

Validation Procedures

17.1.1.1 Document type is “Wholesale Drug Distributor/Third-Party Logistics Facility Report” (75030-7)

17.1.1.2 The effective time year matches the current year.

17.1.1.3 There is no title.

17.1.1.4 If a document with the same set id has been previously submitted, then it is a *Wholesale Drug Distributor/Third-Party Logistics Facility Report* (75030-7).

17.1.1.5 For Withdrawal of Wholesale Drug Distributors and Third-Party Logistics Facility Report (77573-4) the set ID in this document should be the same set id included in a previously submitted Wholesale Drug Distributors and Third-Party Logistics Facility Report (75030-7), with information about your establishment(s).

17.1.2 Reporter information

```
<document>
  <author>
    <assignedEntity>
      <representedOrganization>
        <!-- facility, may be pass-through -->
        <assignedEntity>

<assignedOrganization> <!-- reporter -->
  <id extension="100000002" root="1.3.6.1.4.1.519.1"/>
  <name>ACME Drug Logistics, Inc.</name>
  <contactParty>
```

Validation Procedures

17.1.2.1 If the document type is *Wholesale Drug Distributor/Third-Party Logistics Facility Report* (75030-7), then there is reporter information.

17.1.2.2 There is one id (the DUNS Number) and name as in Section 2.1.5.

17.1.2.3 id (reporter's DUNS Number) is not associated with any other set id of document type *Wholesale Drug Distributor/Third-Party Logistics Facility Report*

17.1.2.4 The set id is not associated with any other reporter id (DUNS Number).

17.1.2.5 There is one contact party as in Section 2.1.8.

17.1.2.6 Facility submission has no labeler information (no validation rules defined for it.)

17.1.3 Facility Information

```
<document>
  <author>
    <assignedEntity>
      <representedOrganization>
        <assignedEntity>
            <assignedOrganization> <!-- registrant -->
              <assignedEntity>

<confidentialityCode code="B" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.25"/>

<assignedOrganization> <!-- facility -->
  <id root="1.3.6.1.4.1.519.1" extension="449819433"/>
  <name>Acme, LLC</name>
  <addr>
    <streetAddressLine>325 Good Hope Avenue</streetAddressLine>
    <city>Milwaukee</city>
    <state>WI</state>
    <postalCode>53014</postalCode>
    <country code="USA" codeSystem="1.0.3166.1.2.3">USA</country>
  </addr>

  <asNamedEntity> <!-- other “doing business as” name -->
    <code code="C117113" displayName="doing business as"
          codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"/>
    <name>A.C.M.E. Logistic</name>
  </asNamedEntity>

  <contactParty .../>
```

The confidentiality code “B” may be used at the facility level to indicate that the street address of this facility should be suppressed in public data releases.

Validation Procedures

17.1.3.1 If the document type is *Wholesale Drug Distributor/Third-Party Logistics Facility Report* (75030-7), then there are one or more facilities.

17.1.3.2 Facility has a name and optionally one id (the DUNS Number,) as in Section 2.1.5.

17.1.3.3 DUNS number, if present, is not associated with another facility in the same SPL file.

17.1.3.4 DUNS number, if present, is not associated with any other set id for document type *Wholesale Drug Distributor/Third-Party Logistics Facility Report* (75030-7)

17.1.3.5 DUNS number, if present, along with the facility name and address information match the DUNS number record in the Dun and Bradstreet database

17.1.3.6 Each facility has an address as in Section 2.1.6.

17.1.3.7 There is one contact party as in Section 2.1.8.

17.1.3.8 There is no further assigned entity under the facility.

17.1.3.9 There may be zero or more “doing business as” names (DBA names).

17.1.3.10 DBA names has code C117113 and code system 2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1.

17.1.3.11 DBA name has one name element.

17.1.3.12 There may be a suffix beginning with space, and the abbreviation WDD or 3PL in square brackets.

17.1.3.13 If the suffix is [WDD], then one business operation for this facility is Wholesale Drug Distributor (C118411).

17.1.3.14 If the suffix is [3PL], then one business operation for this facility is Third-Party Logistics Provider (C118412).

17.1.3.15 If the facility has the same “doing business as” (DBA) name regardless of business operation, then no suffix is specified.

17.1.3.16 The facility should not have the same “doing business as” (DBA) name with the same business operation.

17.1.4 Facility operation

```
<document>
  <author>
    <assignedEntity>
      <representedOrganization>
        <!-- manufacturer, may be pass-through -->
          <assignedEntity>
            <assignedOrganization> <!-- reporter -->

<assignedEntity>
  <assignedOrganization>
    <!-- facility -->
  </assignedOrganization>

  <performance>
    <actDefinition>
      <code code="C118411" displayName="wholesale drug distribution"
                           codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"/>
```

Validation Procedures

17.1.4.1 There are one or two facility operation details (performance act definitions).

17.1.4.2 Act definition code is C118411 (Wholesale Drug Distributor) or C118412 Third-Party Logistics Provider) and code system is 2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1.

17.1.4.3 Act definition display business operation name matches corresponding business operation code.

17.1.4.4 Each business operation code is mentioned only once per facility.

17.1.4.5 There is no product reference.

17.1.5 License

```
<performance>
  <actDefinition>
    <code code="C118411" displayName="wholesale drug distribution"
                         codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"/>

    <subjectOf>
      <approval>
        <id extension="license number"
            root="State license authority OID (see text)"/>
        <code code="C118779" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
   displayName="wholesale drug distributor third party logistics license"/>
        <statusCode code="completed"/>
        <effectiveTime>
          <high value="20140824"/>
        </effectiveTime>
```

```
        <author>
          <territorialAuthority>
            <territory>
              <code code="state code from ISO 3166-2, e.g. US-MD"
                    codeSystem="1.0.3166.2"/>
            </territory>
          </territorialAuthority>
        </author>
```

Example:

```
<performance>
  <actDefinition>
    <code code="C118411" displayName="wholesale drug distribution"
                         codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"/>
    <subjectOf>
      <approval>
        <id extension="2013-WL-123456"
            root="1.3.6.1.4.1.32366.4.840.805"/>
        <code code="C118779"
              codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
              displayName="wholesale drug distribution license"/>
        <statusCode code="completed"/>
        <effectiveTime>
          <high value="20140824"/>
        </effectiveTime>
        <author>
          <territorialAuthority>
            <territory>
              <code code="US-MD" codeSystem="1.0.3166.2"/>
            </territory>
          </territorialAuthority>
        </author>
```

Validation Procedures

17.1.5.1 There may be zero or more licenses.

17.1.5.2 License Code is from the License Type Code list.

17.1.5.3 Display name matches the code.

17.1.5.4 Code system is 2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1.

17.1.5.5 Territorial authority indicates the state issuing the license using the ISO 3166-2 state codes with code system 1.0.3166.2.

17.1.5.6 License has an id (license number).

17.1.5.7 id has an extension, the license number.

17.1.5.8 id has a root beginning with “1.3.6.1.4.1.32366.4.840” followed by a period “.” and ending in a decimal number equal to the value of the 2-letter ISO 3166-2 U.S. state code interpreted as a base 36 number with the digits 0-9 and A-Z, with the letter digits having the value of 9 added to the ordinal letter position (A: 1 + 9 = 10, B = 2 + 9 = 11, ..., Z = 26 + 9 = 35); e.g., Arizona, having the ISO 3166-2 “US-AZ”, i.e., the 2-letter state code “AZ” with (A =) (1 + 9) × 36 + (Z =) (26 + 9) = 10 × 36 + 35 = 395, resulting in “1.3.6.1.4.1.32366.4.840.395”.

17.1.5.9 License has a status code with values *active*, *suspended*, *aborted* (meaning “revoked”), or *completed* (meaning “expired”).

17.1.5.10 License has an effective time high value (expiration date).

17.1.5.11 License has no effective time low value (license issue date not reported).

17.1.5.12 The effective time high boundary has at least the precision of day in the format YYYYMMDD

17.1.5.13 If the status code is *completed*, then the current date is later than the effective time high value.

17.1.5.14 If the current date is later than the effective time high value, then the status code is not *active.*

17.1.5.15 The combination of license number, license type, and license issuing state is not associated with any other set id of document type Wholesale Drug Distributor and Third-Party Logistics Facility Report (75030-7).

17.1.6 Business Operation Qualifier

```
<performance>
  <actDefinition>
    <code code="C118412" displayName="third-party logistics provider"
          codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"/>
    <subjectOf>
      <approval>
        <code code="C123274" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
              displayName="warehouses human prescription drug products"/>
```

17.1.6.1 There may be one business operation qualifier if the business operation is third-party logistics provider (C118412).

17.1.6.2 There is no id.

17.1.6.3 Business operation qualifier is warehouses human prescription drug products (C123274).

17.1.6.4 Display name matches the code.

17.1.6.5 Code system is 2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1.

17.1.6.6 Business operation is third-party logistics provider (C118412).

17.1.7 Approval Disciplinary Action

```
<approval>
  <subjectOf>
    <action>
      <code code="disciplinary action code"
            codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
            displayName=" disciplinary action name"/>
      <effectiveTime value="disciplinary action effective time"/>
      <subjectOf>
        <document>
          <text mediaType="application/pdf">
            <reference value="suspension01.pdf"/>
          </text>
        </document>
      </subjectOf>
```

When action is "other" a brief text description of the nature of the action should be included:

```
<approval>
  <subjectOf>
    <action>
      <code code="C118472"
            codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
            displayName="other"/>
      <text xsi:type="ST">brief description of nature of action</text>
      <effectiveTime value="disciplinary action effective time"/>
      <subjectOf>
        <document>
          <text mediaType="application/pdf">
            <reference value="suspension01.pdf"/>
          </text>
        </document>
      </subjectOf>
```

Validation Procedures

17.1.7.1 There is a disciplinary action code.

17.1.7.2 Code comes from the *Approval action* list.

17.1.7.3 Display name matches the code

17.1.7.4 Code system is 2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1.

17.1.7.5 If action is “other” (C118472), then there is a text element containing a brief description of the nature of the action:

17.1.7.6 Text must be of xsi:type “ST” (plain text string).

17.1.7.7 Disciplinary action has an effective time.

17.1.7.8 The effective time value has at least the precision of day in the format YYYYMMDD.

17.1.7.9 Disciplinary actions are in chronological order, i.e., most recent action last.

17.1.7.10 If the last disciplinary action is a *suspension* (C118406), then the license status code is *suspended* or *completed*.

17.1.7.11 If the last disciplinary action is a *revocation* (C118407), then the license status code is *aborted*.

17.1.7.12 If the last disciplinary action is *(re-)activation* (C118408), then the license status code is *active*.

17.1.7.13 If the last disciplinary action is a *resolution* (C118471), then the license status code is *active* or *completed*.

17.1.7.14 If the last disciplinary action is “other” (C118472), then the license status code is active, completed, suspended or aborted.

17.1.7.15 There may be one or more disciplinary action document references.

17.1.7.16 Document reference has a text element with mediaType and reference.

17.1.7.17 Reference value is the file name for a valid document attachment.

17.1.7.18 Size of document attachment is less than 1 MB.

17.1.7.19 File name extension matches the media type“.pdf”.

17.1.7.20 All pdf files associated with the document must be actually referenced from that “Wholesale Drug Distributor/Third-Party Logistics Facility Report” (75030-7) document.

17.2 Body - Empty

Use an empty document body:

```
<document>
   <component>
      <structuredBody/>
```

or

```
<document>
   <component>
      <nonXMLBody>
         <text/>
```

18 40 CFR 180 TOLERANCE

18.1 Header

18.1.1 Document type

```
<document>
  code code="3565717"
       codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.275.1"
       displayName="40 CFR 180 Tolerance"/>
```

Validation Procedures

18.1.1.1 Document type is “40 CFR 180 TOLERANCE” (3565717).

18.1.1.2 Code comes from the *EPA Document type* list

18.1.1.3 Code system is 2.16.840.1.113883.6.275.1

18.1.1.4 Display name matches the code

18.1.1.5 If a document with the same set id has been previously submitted, then it is of the same type.

18.1.2 Author Information

```
<author>
  <time/>
  <assignedEntity>
    <representedOrganization>
      <id root="1.3.6.1.4.1.519.1" extension="057944910"/>
      <name>US Environmental Protection Agency</name>
```

Validation Procedures

18.1.2.1 There is an author.

18.1.2.2 There are no other elements than id and name.

18.1.2.3 There is one company name.

18.1.2.4 The name matches the name in the Company Number List.

18.1.3 Docket Number

The Docket Number is specified as follows:

```
<document>
  ...
  <author .../>
  <relatedDocument typeCode="XFRM">
    <relatedDocument>
      <id extension="docket number" root="docket number root OID"/>
    </relatedDocument>
  </relatedDocument>
  <component .../>
</document>
```

18.2 SPL Body

18.2.1 Main Sections

The main sections of the SPL document represent the first level paragraphs, (a), (b), (c), etc. of the section in the regulation.

```
<section>
  <id .../>
  <code code="3145478" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.275.1"
        displayName="(a) General"/>
  <title>(a) General.</title>
  <text/>
  <effectiveTime .../>
```

Validation Procedures

18.2.1.1 Section codes must come from list CFR_40_180_SECTION_PARAGRAPHS.

18.2.1.2 Code system is 2.16.840.1.113883.6.275.1.

18.2.1.3 Display name matches the code.

18.2.1.4 Title of the section matches the display name of the section code.

18.2.2 Sub-Section

The first level sub sections of the SPL document represent the second level sub-paragraphs, (1), (2), (3), etc. in the regulation.

```
<section>
  ...
  <component>
    <section>
      <id .../>
      <title>(1)</title>
      <text>...</text>
      <effectiveTime .../>
```

Validation Procedures

18.2.2.1 There is no section code.

18.2.2.2 There is a title with an Arabic ordinal number in parentheses, e.g., “(1)”, “(2)”, etc.

18.2.3 Tolerance Specification

```
<section>
  <component>
    <section>
      <subject>
        <identifiedSubstance>
          <id extension="..." root="2.16.840.1.113883.4.9"/>
          <identifiedSubstance>
            <code code="..." codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.4.9"/>
            <name>...</name>
          </identifiedSubstance>
          <subjectOf>
            <substanceSpecification>
              <code code="40-CFR-..."
                    codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.149"/>
              <component>
                <observation moodCode="DEF">
                  <code code="" displayName="" codeSystem=""/>
```

```
                    <analyte>
                      <identifiedSubstance>
                        <id extension="..." root="2.16.840.1.113883.4.9"/>
                          <identifiedSubstance>
                            <code code="..."
                                  codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.4.9"/>
                            <name>...</name>
                        </identifiedSubstance>
                      </identifiedSubstance>
                    </analyte>
                    <referenceRange>
                      <observationCriterion>
                        <value xsi:type="IVL_PQ">
                          <high value="" unit="[ppm]"/>
                        </value>
                        <subject>
                          <presentSubstance>
                            <presentSubstance>
                              <code code="..."
                                    codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.275.1"
                                    displayName="..."/>
                              <name>...</name>
                            </presentSubstance>
                          </presentSubstance>
                        </subject>
                        <subjectOf>
                          <approval>
                            <code code="3565718"
                                  codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.275.1"
                                  displayName="General Tolerance"/>
                            <text>text note about this tolerance</text>
                            <effectiveTime xsi:type="IVL_TS"
                              <high value="expiration/revocation date"/>
                            </effectiveTime>
```

Validation Procedures

18.2.3.1 There is one identified substance with UNII code.

18.2.3.2 There is one substance code.

18.2.3.3 Code system is 2.16.840.1.113883.4.9.

18.2.3.4 Code and code system are the same as the parent element id’s extension and root respectively.

18.2.3.5 There is one substance name.

18.2.3.6 Code comes from the substance name list.

18.2.3.7 Substance name matches code.

18.2.3.8 The substanceSpecification code is formed by using the fixed prefix “40-CFR0-” followed by the section number present in document title.

18.2.3.9 Code system is 2.16.840.1.113883.3.149.

18.2.3.10 There is a code (Enforcement Analytical Method).

18.2.3.11 Code comes from the Enforcement Analytical Method list.

18.2.3.12 Display name matches the code.

18.2.3.13 There is are or more analytes, the substance(s) being measured.

18.2.3.14 Each analyte refers to one substance measured.

18.2.3.15 The rules for substance code and name are as in 19.2.3.2ff

18.2.4 Tolerance Range and Commodity

```
        <substanceSpecification>
          <component>
            <observation moodCode="DEF">
              <referenceRange>
                <observationCriterion>
                  <value xsi:type="IVL_PQ">
                    <high value="" unit="[ppm]"/>
                  </value>
                  <interpretationCode code="N"/>
                  <subject>
                    <presentSubstance classCode="LOCE">
                      <presentSubstance>
                        <code code="..."
                              codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.275.1"
                              displayName="..."/>
                        <name>...</name>
                      </presentSubstance>
                    </presentSubstance>
                  </subject>
                  <subjectOf>
                    <approval>
                      <code code="3565718"
                           codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.275.1"
                           displayName="General Tolerance"/>
                      <text>text note about this tolerance</text>
                      <effectiveTime xsi:type="IVL_TS"
                        <high value="expration/revocation date"/>
                      </effectiveTime>
```

18.2.4.1 There are one or more reference ranges (tolerances)

18.2.4.2 Reference ranges have a value

18.2.4.3 Value is of xsi type IVL_PQ

18.2.4.4 There is a high boundary with value and unit

18.2.4.5 There is no low boundary

18.2.4.6 High boundary value is a number.

18.2.4.7 High boundary unit is “[ppm]”.

18.2.4.8 There may be a commodity specified for the tolerance.

18.2.4.9 There is a tolerance commodity code.

18.2.4.10 Code system is 2.16.840.1.113883.6.275.1.

18.2.4.11 Code comes from the Tolerance Commodity list.

18.2.4.12 Display name matches code.

18.2.4.13 There is an application type (approval).

18.2.4.14 There is an application type (approval) code.

18.2.4.15 Code system is 2.16.840.1.113883.6.275.1.

18.2.4.16 Code comes from the Application Type list.

18.2.4.17 Display name matches code.

18.2.4.18 There may be an expiration or revocation date.

18.2.4.19 Expiration or revocation date has a high boundary

18.2.4.20 Expiration or revocation date value has the format YYYYMMDD

18.2.4.21 Expiration or revocation date has no low boundary

18.2.4.22 There may be a text annotation.

18.2.5 Specific Sections and Sub-Sections

18.2.5.1 There is a section (a) General.

18.2.5.2 There is a section (b) Section 18 Emergency exemptions.

18.2.5.3 There is a section (c) Tolerances with regional restrictions.

18.2.5.4 There is a section (d) Indirect or inadvertent residues

18.2.5.5 There may be a section (e) Revoked tolerances subject to the channel of trade provisions

18.2.5.6 There may be a section (f) Import tolerances

19 Indexing - Biologic or Drug Substance

This document communicates the FDA-preferred non-proprietary name (specified substance name) for the drug or biologic product associated with the application number included in this indexing SPL document.

19.1 Header

19.1.1 Document Type

```
<document>
  <code code="77648-4" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
        displayName="Indexing - Biologic or Drug Substance"/>
```

Validation Procedures

19.1.1.1 The code for the document type is Indexing - Biologic or Drug Substance (77648-4).

19.1.1.2 If a document with the same set id has been previously submitted then it is of the same type.

19.1.2 Author

The drug/biologic substance indexing is maintained by FDA:

```
<document ...>
  <author>
    <assignedEntity>
      <representedOrganization>
        <id root="1.3.6.1.4.1.519.1" extension="927645523"/>
        <name>Food and Drug Administration</name>
```

Validation Procedures

19.1.2.1 Author information for drug/biologic substance indexing is as one of the above.

19.1.2.2 The author is Food and Drug Administration (FDA).

19.1.2.3 There are no other author elements than id and name.

19.1.3 Related Document

The information in the drug/biologic substance indexing SPL file may be automatically linked to the SPL document submitted by the biologic or drug product's distributor or manufacturer using the related document element which contains the set ID of the biologic or drug product's SPL document. The related document SPL is specified using its setId as follows:

```
<document>
  ...
  <author .../>
  <relatedDocument typeCode="XCRPT”>
    <relatedDocument>
      <setId root="fe707775-a0ae-41b5-a744-28c41889fce8"/>
    </relatedDocument>
  </relatedDocument>
```

Validation Procedures

19.1.3.1 There is a specified related document.

19.1.3.2 Type code attribute is as above.

19.1.3.3 There is no document id.

19.1.3.4 There is a set id.

19.1.3.5 Set id is a GUID.

19.1.3.6 Related document's set id is the set id of a drug listing document.

19.1.3.7 If a drug/biologic substance indexing file for the same related document's set id has been previously submitted, then it is a prior version of this indexing document with the same set id.

19.1.3.8 If a document with the same set id has been previously submitted, then it is associated with the same related document's set id.

19.2 Body

```
<document>
  <component>
    <structuredBody>
```

```
    <component><!-- old data element section -->
      <section>
        <id .../>
        <code code="48779-3" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
              displayName="SPL indexing data elements section"/>
        <effectiveTime>
          <low value="old data effective start date"/>
          <high value="old data effective end date"/>
        </effectiveTime>
        <subject ... old data ... />
      </section>
    </component>

    <component><!-- new data element section -->
      <section>
        <id .../>
        <code code="48779-3" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
              displayName="SPL indexing data elements section"/>
        <effectiveTime>
          <low value="new data effective star date"/>
        </effectiveTime>
        <subject ... new data ... />
      </section>
```

Validation Procedures

19.2.1.1 There is a document body.

19.2.1.2 Document body contains one or two sections of type SPL Indexing Data Elements.

19.3 Index Data Element Section(s) in General

```
<document>
  <component>
    <structuredBody>

    <component>
      <section>
        <id .../>
        <code code="48779-3" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
              displayName="SPL indexing data elements section"/>
        <effectiveTime>
          <low value="old data effective start date"/>
          <high value="old data effective end date"/>
        </effectiveTime>
        <subject ... old data ... />
      </section>
    </component>
```

Validation Procedures

19.3.1.1 Effective time has a low boundary indicating the period for the use of the specified substance name (FDA-preferred non-proprietary name) (data effective start date).

19.3.1.2 Data Elements section start date has at least the precision of day in the format YYYYMMDD.

19.3.1.3 Data Elements section end date has at least the precision of day in the format YYYYMMDD.

19.3.1.4 Data Elements section start date is before data elements section end date.

19.3.1.5 Data elements section contains information for a drug or biologic product.

19.4 New (or only) Index Data Element Section

```
<document>
  <component>
    <structuredBody>

    <component ... old data element section, if any ... />

    <component><!-- new or only data element section -->
      <section>
        <id .../>
        <code code="48779-3" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
              displayName="SPL indexing data elements section"/>
        <effectiveTime>
          <low value="new data effective star date"/>
        </effectiveTime>
        <subject ... new data ... />
      </section>
```

Validation Procedures

19.4.1.1 Data effective start date is same as the effective time in document information.

19.5 Old Index Data Element Section

```
<document>
  <component>
    <structuredBody>

    <component><!-- old data element section -->
      <section>
        <id .../>
        <code code="48779-3" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
              displayName="SPL indexing data elements section"/>
        <effectiveTime>
          <low value="old data effective start date"/>
          <high value="old data effective end date"/>
        </effectiveTime>
        <subject ... old data ... />
      </section>
    </component>

    <component ... new data element section ... />
```

Validation Procedures

19.5.1.1 Old data elements section contains effective time high boundary (old data effective end date).

19.5.1.2 Old data element section comes before the new data element section.

19.5.1.3 Old SPL indexing data elements section has been submitted in the previous version of the document.

19.5.1.4 New SPL indexing data elements section data should not match exactly to the old SPL indexing data elements section.

19.5.1.5 The end date of old data elements section is equal to the start date of new data elements section.

19.5.2 Biologic/Drug Product Information

```
<section>
  ...
  <subject>
    <manufacturedProduct>
      <manufacturedProduct>
        <code code=“61314-304” codeSystem=“2.16.840.1.113883.6.69”/>
        <name>ZARXIO</name>
        <ingredient classCode=“ACTIB”/>
          <ingredientSubstance>
             <code code="PVI5M0M1GW"
                   codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.4.9"/>
             <name>filgrastim-SNDZ</name>
          </ingredientSubstance>
          <subjectOf ... substance specification .../>
        </ingredient>
      </manufacturedProduct>
      <subjectOf>
        <approval>
          <id extension="BLA125553" root="2.16.840.1.113883.3.150"/>
          <code code="C73585" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
                displayName="BLA"/>
          <author>
            <territorialAuthority>
              <territory>
                 <code code="USA" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.28"/>
```

Validation Procedures

19.5.2.1 There is a name, i.e., proprietary name of the product as used in product labeling (see subsection 3.2.1.17ff).

19.5.2.2 There is one active ingredient according to subsection 3.2.3.

19.5.2.3 The strength is not specified for the active ingredient.

19.5.2.4 The active moiety is not specified for the active ingredient.

19.5.2.5 Active ingredient is actually in the product, with the same basis of strength (classCode).

19.5.2.6 There is a marketing category and application number as per subsection 3.1.7.

19.5.3 Specified Substance

```
<ingredient classCode="ACTIB"/>
  <ingredientSubstance .../>
  <subjectOf>
    <substanceSpecification>
      <code code=" PVI5M0M1GW-SNDZ-1" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.6277"
            displayName="filgrastim-SNDZ"/>
```

Validation Procedures

19.5.3.1 There is a specified substance code with code and code system.

19.5.3.2 Code system is 2.16.840.1.113883.3.6277.

19.5.3.3 There is a specified substance code display name.

19.5.3.4 Display name matches the specified substance code.

20 Indexing - Warning Letter Alert

This document is to be used to connect the content of an FDA warning letter to the product SPL document of the product(s) described in the warning letter.

20.1 Header

20.1.1 Document Type

```
<document>
  <code code="77288-9" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
        displayName="Indexing - Warning Letter Alert "/>
```

Validation Procedures

20.1.1.1 The code for the document type is Indexing - Warning Letter Alert (77288-9).

20.1.1.2 If a document with the same set id has been previously submitted then it is of the same type.

20.1.2 Author

The Indexing – Warning Letter Alert file is maintained by FDA:

```
<document ...>
  <author>
    <assignedEntity>
      <representedOrganization>
        <id root="1.3.6.1.4.1.519.1" extension="927645523"/>
        <name>Food and Drug Administration</name>
```

Validation Procedures

20.1.2.1 Author information for Indexing - Warning Letter is as one of the above.

20.1.2.2 The DUNS Number for the author is 927645523.

20.1.2.3 There are no other author elements than id and name.

20.1.3 Reference Labeling

The information in the warning letter alert indexing SPL file may be automatically linked to the SPL document submitted by the biologic or drug product's distributor or manufacturer using the related document element which contains the set ID of the biologic or drug product's SPL document. The SPL document containing the Reference Labeling is specified using its setId as follows:

```
<document>
  ...
  <author .../>

  <relatedDocument typeCode="XCRPT”>
    <relatedDocument>
      <!-- <id root="2608fb41-083b-402b-94a0-0629fa484bb7"/> -->
      <setId root="5dd66ebe-31b8-4319-9ff2-c37baaa138e6"/>
    </relatedDocument>
  </relatedDocument>
```

Validation Procedures

20.1.3.1 There is related document specified.

20.1.3.2 Type code attribute is as above.

20.1.3.3 There is no document id.

20.1.3.4 There is a set id.

20.1.3.5 Set id is a GUID.

20.1.3.6 Related document set id is the set id of a drug listing document.

20.1.3.7 If a warning letter alert indexing file for the same related document set id has been previously submitted, then it is a prior version of this indexing document with the same set id.

20.1.3.8 If a document with the same set id has been previously submitted, then it is associated with the same related document set id.

20.2 Body

```
<document>          <!-- SPL header material here -->
  <component>
    <structuredBody><!-- SPL body material here -->
      <component>
        <section>   <!-- Product data element section -->
          <code code="48780-1" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
                displayName="SPL product data elements section"/>
          <subject>
            <manufacturedProduct>
              <!-- product data elements -->
            </manufacturedProduct>
          </subject>
        </section>
      </component>
                  <!-- Other content of labeling material -->
      <component>
        <!-- ... -->
```

20.2.1 Indexing Section

Validation Procedures:

20.2.1.1 If the document type is Indexing – Warning Letter Alert (77288-9,) then the document contains one or more SPL Indexing Data Elements section as above.

20.2.1.2 Value of effective time is same as value of effective time in document information.

20.2.2 Warning Letter Alert Data Element

```
<subject>
  <manufacturedProduct>
    <manufacturedProduct>
      <name>proprietary name <suffix>suffix to name</suffix></name>
      <formCode code="C42998" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
                displayName="tablet"/>
      <asEntityWithGeneric>
        <genericMedicine>
          <name>non-proprietary name</name>
        </genericMedicine>
```

Validation Procedures:

20.2.2.1 There is a name, i.e., proprietary name of the product as used in product labeling SPL.

20.2.2.2 There is a generic medicine name as used in product labeling SPL.

20.2.2.3 There is a form code (dosage form).

20.2.2.4 Form code (dosage form) has the code system 2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1.

20.2.2.5 There are one or more strength amounts with a numerator and denominator for the active ingredient.

20.2.2.6 There is one or more product item codes.

20.2.2.7 If the product item code is an NDC/NHRIC (i.e., if the root is "2.16.840.1.113883.6.69"), then the following procedures apply:

20.2.2.8 Code (NDC/NHRIC product code) has two segments separated by a hyphen.

20.2.2.9 The first segment (NDC/NHRIC labeler code) is numeric.

20.2.2.10 Segments (NDC/NHRIC product codes) follow the pattern of 4-4, 5-4 or 5-3.

20.2.3 Warning Letter Date Element

If the issue described in the warning letter has been resolved, there are date elements which can automatically inform the receiving system that the matter has been closed.

20.2.3.1 Effective time has a low boundary indicating the date the alert was issued.

20.2.3.2 Effective time may have a high boundary indicating when the issue described in the letter has been resolved.

20.2.3.3 Warning letter alert date has at least the precision of day in the format YYYYMMDD

20.2.3.4 Warning letter alert closure date has at least the precision of day in the format YYYYMMDD

20.2.3.5 Warning letter alert date is before reporting end date.

21 Risk Evaluation and Mitigation Strategy (REMS)

21.1 REMS Document

REMS are programs designed to ensure that the benefits of certain drugs outweigh their risks.

21.1.1 Document type

All REMS documents have the following document type code. See Section 1 and 2 of the SPL Implementation Guide and Validation Procedures for general rules.

```
<document>
  <id root="Document Id (UUID)"/>
  <code code="82351-8" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
        displayName="Risk Evaluation &amp;amp; Mitigation Strategies"/>
  <title>Drug Risk Evaluation and Mitigation Strategy</title>
  <effectivTime value="YYYYMMDD"/>
  <setId root="Document Set Id (UUID)"
  <versionNumber value="1"/>
```

Validation Procedures

21.1.1.1 Document type is “Risk Evaluation and Mitigation Strategies” (82351-8)

21.1.1.2 There is an author.

21.1.1.3 If a document with the same set id has been previously submitted, then it is of the same type.

21.1.1.4 There is a title with the "Risk Evaluation and Management (REMS) Document" followed by [Drug/Class Name] REMS Program.

21.1.2 REMS Author information

```
<document ...>
  <author>
    <assignedEntity>
      <representedOrganization>
        <id root="1.3.6.1.4.1.519.1" extension="Sponsor DUNS"/>
        <name>Sponsor Name</name>
```

Validation Procedures

21.1.2.1 There is one (author of document)

21.1.2.2 There is one id, the sponsor’s DUNS number, and name is as in Section 2.1.5.

21.1.2.3 There is no other element besides id (the sponsor's DUNS Number) and name.

21.1.3 REMS Related Document

The REMS are provided for a drug or biologic product represented by the related document(s) SPL. As such, REMS append the related document(s) with more detail how to evaluate and manage risks regarding the product described in the related document(s). The related document(s) SPL document is referred to by its setId as follows:

```
<document>
  ...
  <author .../>
  <relatedDocument typeCode="SUBJ">
    <relatedDocument>
      <setId root="97cf7820-4bfe-4caa-86f1-a97bfcf1917a"/>
    </relatedDocument>
  </relatedDocument>
  <component .../>
</document>
```

Validation Procedures

21.1.3.1 There is at least one related document specified.

21.1.3.2 Type code for the related document is as above.

21.1.3.3 There is a set id with root and no extension.

21.1.3.4 Set id root is a GUID.

21.1.3.5 Related document set id is the set id of a product document of the specified type.

21.1.3.6 If a REMS document file for the same related document set id has been previously submitted, then it is a prior version of this REMS document with the same set id.

21.1.3.7 If a document with the same set id has been previously submitted, then it is associated with the same related document set id.

21.2 SPL Body

21.2.1 REMS Sections and Subsections

See subsection 2.1.1 of the FDA's SPL Implementation Guide with Validation Procedures document for general section and subsection information.

Validation Procedures

21.2.1.1 REMS documents have the following sections and subsections:

21.2.1.2 REMS documents may have the following sections: Patient Medication Information Section (68498-5), REMS Elements to Assure Safe Use (82345-0), REMS Communication Plan (82344-3), and REMS Implementation System (82350-0).

21.2.1.3 REMS documents with the REMS Elements to Assure Safe Use (82345-0) may also have REMS Summary (82347-6).

21.2.1.4 If the REMS document has any attachments, then the attachments are referenced from within the REMS Material (82346-8) section.

21.2.2 REMS Product

REMS product description contains less detail than the description of the product found in the related document SPL.

The beginning of the product data elements is as follows

```
<component>
  <section>
    <id root="Section UUID"/>
    <code code="48780-1"
          codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
          displayName="SPL product data elements section"/>
    <effectiveTime value="YYYYMMDD"/>
    <subject>
      <manufacturedProduct>
```

The limited data elements for REMS products:

```
<subject>
  <manufacturedProduct>
    <manufacturedProduct>
      <name>proprietary name (except for shared system REMS)</name>

      <asEntityWithGeneric>
        <genericMedicine>
          <name>non proprietary name</name>
        </genericMedicine>
      </asEntityWithGeneric>
    </manufacturedProduct>

    <subjectOf>
      <approval>
        <!-- marketing category and application number -->
```

Validation Procedures

21.2.2.1 Code, code system and display name are as above

21.2.2.2 There is an effective time with at least the precision of day in the format YYYYMMDD

21.2.2.3 There are one or more products

21.2.2.4 There is no product item code.

21.2.2.5 There is a generic name.

21.2.2.6 There is a proprietary name, except in a shared system REMS document.

21.2.2.7 There are no ingredients stated.

21.2.2.8 There is no package information.

21.2.2.9 There is no route of administrations in REMS documents.

21.2.2.10 There are no other product characteristics in REMS documents.

21.2.3 Marketing Category and Application Number

The approval structure specifies in the <code> the marketing category under which the product is approved for marketing. Products marketed under an approved application have an application number in the <id extension> and application tracking system under <id root>.

```
<manufacturedProduct>
  <manufacturedProduct> ... </manufacturedProduct>
  <subjectOf>
    <approval>
      <id extension="applicationnumber"
          root="FDA document tracking system OID"/>
      <code code="code for marketing category"
            codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
            displayName="display name"/>
      <holder>
        <role>
          <playingOrganization>
            <id root="1.3.6.1.4.1.519.1"
                extension="Application Holder DUNS"/>
            <name>Application Holder Name</name>
          </playingOrganization>
        </role>
      </holder>
```

```
      <author>
        <territorialAuthority>
          <territory>
            <code code="USA" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.28"/>
          </territory>
        </territorialAuthority>
      </author>
```

Validation Procedures

21.2.3.1 There is one marketing category for every product.

21.2.3.2 There is a marketing category code.

21.2.3.3 In a REMS SPL document, the marketing category is only ANDA (C73584) BLA (C73585,) or NDA (C73594.)

21.2.3.4 Display name matches the code

21.2.3.5 Code system is 2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1

21.2.3.6 Territorial authority is as above

21.2.3.7 Marketing authorization holder is specified with DUNS number and name as above.

21.2.4 REMS Summary

All REMS with Elements to Assure Safe Use (ETASU) submitted in SPL format include a REMS Summary. The REMS Summary is an overview of what stakeholders who participate in REMS with ETASU, such as healthcare providers, patients, and distributors, are required to do under the REMS' Elements to Assure Safe Use and Implementation System. The information in the summary is presented as a series of tables that show what clinical or administrative activity each stakeholder must carry out at each point in the medication use process. It is designed to be a reader-friendly summary of the REMS program requirements as well as a tool to facilitate the coding of REMS SPL data elements.

The REMS Summary includes all requirements in the REMS Document that are directed towards stakeholders other than the application holder, but the summary should not include activities that REMS participants learn about or acknowledge but do not agree to undertake. For example, when filling out a form to enroll in the

REMS, a prescriber may acknowledge the importance of monitoring patients regularly. Unless they also agree to perform this monitoring, it would not be included in the summary.

The summary should also not include activities that REMS participants do not need to complete in order to be able to use the drug. For example, as part of a REMS, the application holder may provide prescribers with a checklist to be used when prescribing the drug. If prescribers must complete the checklist in order to be able to prescribe the drug, then use of the checklist counts as a requirement. If prescribers can successfully prescribe the drug without using the checklist, then use of the checklist should not be included in the summary.

The summary is intended to be rendered as a series of tables as per the following template, including one table for each stakeholder who participates in the REMS.

[Stakeholder Name]

[Protocol]	[Requirement] [Requirement]
[Protocol]	[Requirement]

In the table above, each item in brackets represents a "summary item", and should be replaced with appropriate text as follows:

[Stakeholder] is replaced with a description of the participant to whom the REMS requirements apply, such as "Healthcare Providers who prescribe [drug]". In most cases, simply identifying the role of the participant is sufficient, but in other cases the text will need to be more specific about the setting in which the drug is used, such as, "Healthcare Providers who prescribe the drug in outpatient settings" or "Closed-system outpatient pharmacies that dispense."

[Protocol] is replaced with the step of the medication use process (prescribing, dispensing, etc.) at which the requirement must be met, such as "Before the first prescription " or "After discontinuation". Requirements in the summary are organized by the timing at which they should be carried out – not when they are agreed to or acknowledged.

[Requirement] is replaced with the clinical, administrative, or operational activities that the participant must carry out as part of the REMS, such as "Enroll the patient by completing and submitting the Patient Enrollment Form".

The language used in the requirement section is generally short and succinct, and no more than one or two sentences in length. To facilitate transmission of the text across the healthcare system, it should be in plain text and not use formatting such as bullets or indentations.

When the requirement mentions a material such as an enrollment form, it includes a hyperlink to that material.

When a requirement applies only to a subset of patients (e.g., the requirement applies only to females of childbearing potential or a specific age group), the text is preceded by a description of the patient population followed by a colon, as in the following example: “For a female of childbearing potential: Counsel the patient on contraception” and “For patients younger than age 3: assess the patient’s response to the treatment”.

Within a single step of the medication use process there can be more than one requirement. When the REMS specifies a certain order in which requirements are to be carried out, the summary lists the requirements in that order.

In certain cases multiple stakeholders may play a similar role in the medication use process (e.g., inpatient pharmacies and outpatient pharmacies that dispense the drug) but be subject to significantly different REMS requirements. In these cases the summary should include a separate table and stakeholder item for each of those stakeholders.

FDA provides an illustration of the REMS summary in its “REMS SPL Sample” on its website: http://www.fda.gov/ForIndustry/DataStandards/StructuredProductLabeling/ucm2005542.htm, which includes standardized language that may be used for each summary item. The standardized language should effectively describe most REMS requirements, and summaries should use this language whenever feasible to facilitate consistency across REMS summaries. Application holders do not need to make changes to their REMS Documents to include this standardized language; this language applies only to the REMS Summary.

FDA also provides a terminology for REMS SPL Data Elements to better describe the summary items and help application holders associate the summary items with the SPL data elements described in sections 24.2.5 and 24.2.6. All summary items that appear in the REMS Summary are coded using a corresponding term in the terminology, with the exception of those requirements that apply to patients. If an application holder includes a summary item that does not appear to have a related term in the terminology, the application holder should contact FDA for further assistance.

21.2.5 REMS Summary: Protocol

REMS summary requirements are presented as the substance administration of the drug being a component of a REMS protocol described in the REMS Summary which then has the requirements as other components of that protocol. The basic structure is as follows:

```
<section>
  ...
  <subject2>
    <substanceAdministration>
      <componentOf>
        <sequenceNumber value="2"/>
        <protocol>
          <code code="REMS Protocol Code"
                codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
                displayName="REMS Protocol Code Display Name"/>
          <component>
            <sequenceNumber value="REMS Requirement Sequence Number"/>

            <requirement>
```

Note that sequenceNumber under the <componentOf> element is fixed as value 2. This means that the substance administration of the drug under REMS is step 2 in the REMS summary protocol. Step 2 means that requirements can be meant to occur before (step 1), during (step 2), or after (step 3) the substance administration.

Substance administration is potentially a series of substance administrations depending on the type of protocol (protocol code). If the protocol guides the overall treatment, then substance administration represents the overall treatment beginning with the first prescription, and ending with the last dose. If the protocol guides a course of treatment, then the substance administration represents that course of treatment. This is coded in the protocol code.

Validation Procedures

21.2.5.1 The REMS summary protocol is linked with a componentOf relationship with sequence number 2.

21.2.5.2 REMS summary protocol has a code.

21.2.5.3 REMS summary protocol code comes from the REMS Protocol Type list

21.2.5.4 REMS summary protocol code system is 2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1.

21.2.5.5 REMS summary protocol display name matches the code.

21.2.6 REMS Requirement in the Summary

The requirement is specified under a protocol as follows

```
<substanceAdministration>
  <componentOf>
    <sequenceNumber value="2"/>
    <protocol>
      <component>
        <sequenceNumber value="1"/>

<requirement><!-- or <monitoringObservation> -->
  <code code="REMS Requirement Code"
        displayName="REMS Requirement Code"
        codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1">
    <originalText>
      <reference value="#R003"/>
    </originalText>
  </code>

  <effectiveTime>
    <period value="10" unit="min"/>
  </effectiveTime>

  <participation typeCode="PPRF">
    <stakeholder>
      <code code="C0SH01" displayName="prescriber"
            codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"/>
    </stakeholder>
  </participation>

  <subject>
    <documentReference>
      <id .../>
```

The requirement code original text contains a reference linking to the content of the text which describes this requirement.

The timing of the requirement is specified using the sequence number. Because the substance administration step is fixed at sequence number 2, if a requirement is to occur before the start of the drug step, the requirement's sequence number is set to 1. To occur after the end of the drug step, the requirement's sequence number is set to 3. To occur after the start of and along with the drug step, the requirement's sequence number is set to 2 as well.

The pause quantity element allows placing of requirement at a certain distance from the drug step. For instance,

```
<substanceAdministration>
  <componentOf>
    <sequenceNumber value="2"/><!-- always fixed -->
    <protocol>
      <code ...step in the medication use process .../>
      <component>
        <sequenceNumber value="3"/>
        <pauseQuantity value=“2” unit=“wk”/>
        <requirement>
```

means that the required action is to occur 2 weeks after the end of the step in the medication use process. And the following:

```
<substanceAdministration>
  <componentOf>
    <sequenceNumber value="2"/><!-- always fixed -->
    <protocol>
      <code ...step in the medication use process .../>
      <component>
        <sequenceNumber value="2"/>
        <pauseQuantity value=“1” unit=“h”/>
        <requirement>
```

means that the required action is to occur 1 hour after the start of the step in the medication use process, this often means “during” the medication process, e.g., during a treatment course, measure blood pressure. However, the pause quantity can delay this step a lot more, allowing us to say “2 months after the initiation of treatment”.

```
<substanceAdministration>
  <componentOf>
    <sequenceNumber value="2"/><!-- always fixed -->
    <protocol>
      <code ...step in the medication use process .../>
      <component>
        <sequenceNumber value="2"/>
        <pauseQuantity value=“2” unit=“mo”/>
        <requirement>
```

The pause quantity always determines a delay between the previous step and this step. In the two examples above, the required action occurred after the start or the end of the step in the medication use process. When the required action is to occur *before* the step in the medication use process, the pause quantity moves to the next step, the one with sequence number 2.

```
<substanceAdministration>
  <componentOf>
    <sequenceNumber value="2"/><!-- always fixed -->
    <pauseQuantity value=“1” unit=“h”/>
    <protocol>
      <code ...step in the medication use process .../>
      <component>
        <sequenceNumber value="1"/>
        <requirement>
```

To understand this, think about a simple 3 step action list:

1. do preparatory work
2. do the step in the medication use process
3. do follow up work

In the data model serialized into XML, we simply enter at number 2, the step in the medication use process. We then use sequence number 1 to represent preparatory work done before that step, and sequence number 3 to represent follow-up work done after that step.

2. do the step in the medication use process
    1. do preparatory work

    3. do follow up work.

However, the data model associates the pause with the step that is delayed. So for example:

1. do preparatory work
2. one hour after previous step, do the step in the medication use process
3. two weeks after the previous step, do follow up work

Additionally, a requirement can be said to repeat at a certain period duration. For example, we can say measure blood pressure 20 minutes after start of treatment and then every 10 minutes:

```
<substanceAdministration>
  <componentOf>
    <sequenceNumber value="2"/><!-- always fixed -->
    <protocol>
      <code ...treatment .../>
      <component>
        <sequenceNumber value="2"/>
        <pauseQuantity value=“20” unit=“min”/>
        <monitoringObservation>
          <code ... blood pressure ..../>
          <effectiveTime>
            <period value=“10” unit=“min”/>
```

Validation Procedures

21.2.6.1 There is a REMS Requirement.

21.2.6.2 REMS requirement component has a sequence number with value 1, 2, or 3.

21.2.6.3 If sequence number is 2 or 3, then there may be a pause quantity element.

21.2.6.4 If sequence number is not 2 or 3, then there is no pause quantity element.

21.2.6.5 If sequence number is 1, a pause quantity element may be under the componentOf parent element of the protocol ancestor element.

21.2.6.6 If sequence number is not 1, then there is no pause quantity element under the componentOf parent element of the protocol ancestor element.

21.2.6.7 REMS Requirement has a code

21.2.6.8 REMS Summary Requirement code system is 2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1

21.2.6.9 REMS Summary Requirement code comes from the REMS Requirement list.

21.2.6.10 REMS Summary Requirement display name matches the code.

21.2.6.11 Every text element in the REMS summary has an associated summary requirement code.

21.2.6.12 REMS Summary Requirement code has an original text element with reference value.

21.2.6.13 Reference value links to the content ID of the section text of the section in which it is contained.

21.2.6.14 Reference value can not be the same as that of a different requirement data element.

21.2.6.15 There may be an <effectiveTime> with a <period> element to indicate repetition.

21.2.6.16 If there is an effectiveTime, then it has only a <period> child element.

21.2.6.17 REMS Requirements have a stakeholder

21.2.6.18 Stakeholder participation type code is PPRF.

21.2.6.19 Stakeholder has a code with code system 2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1.

21.2.6.20 Stakeholder code comes from the Stakeholder list.

21.2.6.21 Stakeholder display name matches the code.

21.2.6.22 REMS Summary Requirements may have a document reference (also considered “topic” reference).

21.2.6.23 Document reference has an id with root and no extension.

21.2.6.24 The value of the root matches an id of a document cited as a REMS Material (see Section 24.2.8)

21.2.7 REMS Approval

The Risk Evaluation and Management Strategy (REMS) has a date of initial approval by the agency, which means, it is approved by the agency and this is represented by the following approval structure at the very first time a REMS substanceAdministration with protocol is mentioned in the REMS document.

```
<subject2>
  <substanceAdministration>
    <componentOf>
     <sequenceNumber value="2"/>
     <protocol>
       ...
     </protocol>
    </componentOf>
    <subjectOf>
      <approval>
        <code code="C128899"
              codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1"
              displayName="REMS Approval"/>
        <effectiveTime>
          <low value="Date of REMS Approval [YYYYMMDD]"/>
        </effectiveTime>

        <author>
          <territorialAuthority>
            <territory>
              <code code="USA" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.5.28"/>
            </territory>
          </territorialAuthority>
        </author>
      </approval>
    </subjectOf>
  </substanceAdministration>
</subject2>
```

Validation Procedures

21.2.7.1 The first mention of a REMS protocol in the summary has a REMS approval structure (i.e. a subjectOf / approval element under the subject2 / substanceAdministration).

21.2.7.2 Only the first mention of a REMS protocol in the summary has a REMS approval structure (i.e. only the first subject2 / substanceAdministration has a subjectOf / approval element).

21.2.7.3 There is a code for REMS Approval (C128899).

21.2.7.4 Code system is 2.16.840.1.113883.3.26.1.1

21.2.7.5 Display name matches the code.

21.2.7.6 There is an Initial REMS Program Approval Date (effectiveTime)

21.2.7.7 REMS Program Approval Date has at least the precision of day (YYYYMMDD.)

21.2.8 REMS Material

Materials are appended or referenced from the REMS document under the section of type "REMS Materials". There is a subject manufactured product with no code and only subjectOf/document elements each of which then contain one reference.

For example, the material may be attached PDF file to the REMS submission:

```
         <section>
            ...
            <subject>
              <manufacturedProduct>
                  <manufacturedProduct/>
                  <subjectOf>
                    <document>
                      <id root="00000000-0000-0000-0000-000000000001"/>
                      <title>REMS SPL Pilot Counseling Material
Placeholder<reference value="#T001"/>
                      </title>
                      <text mediaType=“application/pdf”>
                        <reference value="Drug X_2015-11-01_Counseling
Material.pdf"/>
                      </text>
                    </document>
                  </subjectOf>
```

The material may be a PDF file which is a fillable form with instructions on where to send the form which was filled in:

```
                  <subjectOf>
                    <document>
                      <id root="00000000-0000-0000-0000-000000000003"/>
                      <title>REMS SPL Pilot Dispenser Enrollment and
Agreement Form Placeholder<reference value="#T003"/>
                      </title>
                      <text>
                        <reference value="drug-x-dispenser-encollment-
form.pdf"/>
                      </text>
                    </document>
                  </subjectOf>
```

Such forms may also be referenced as web content with an absolute URL reference with the “http://” or https://” protocol:

```
                  <subjectOf>
                    <document>
                      <id root="00000000-0000-0000-0000-000000000004"/>
                      <title>REMS SPL Pilot Prescriber Enrollment and
Agreement Form Placeholder<reference value="#T004"/>
                      </title>
                      <text>
                        <reference value="https://company.com/drug-x-
presciber-encollment.html"/>
                      </text>
                    </document>
                  </subjectOf>
```

For some data submissions NCPDP telecommunication standards may be referenced. These consist at a minimum of an implementation guide document that specifies the data elements:

```
                  <subjectOf>
                    <document>
                      <id root="00000000-0000-0000-0000-000000000005"/>
                      <title>REMS SPL Pilot – NCPDP D0 - Patient Data Sheet
Specification<reference value="#T005"/>
                      </title>
                      <text>
                        <reference value="https://company.com/drug-x-
patient-data-sheet-spec-v1.html"/>
                      </text>
                    </document>
                  </subjectOf>
```

And then the NCPDP telecommunication address may be specified using a special universal resource name (URN) which is formed with the prefix “urn:NCPDP”. For example the URN “urn:NCPDP:D.0:P1:610674:000000000000-0000-0000-0000-00000005”, has four segments of text separated by colons following the prefix “urn:NCPDP:”. The segments are

(1) the NCPDP standard version (e.g. “D.0”),
(2) the transaction (e.g. “P1”)

(3) the BIN number (e.g., 610674), i.e. the destination address, and
(4) ,the id of another REMS material document which is the particular implementation guide for the transaction.

```
                  <subjectOf>
                    <document>
                      <id root="00000000-0000-0000-0000-000000000006"/>
                      <title>REMS SPL Pilot – NCPDP D0 - Patient Data
Sheet<reference value="#T006"/>
                      </title>
                      <text>
                        <reference value="urn:NCPDP:D.0:P1:610674:
00000000-0000-0000-0000-000000000005"/>
                      </text>
                    </document>
                  </subjectOf>
```

Validation Procedures

21.2.8.1 Each reference document has an id root

21.2.8.2 Document reference has a title element with reference.

21.2.8.3 Reference value is present in the content ID of the section text.

21.2.8.4 Document reference has a text element with mediaType and reference.

21.2.8.5 Text teference value without a URL scheme (e.g. “http://”) is the file name for a valid document attachment.

21.2.8.6 If the text reference value is a URL beginning with http:// or https://, then the reference must resolve to a document of the given media type.

21.2.8.7 If the text reference value begins with “uri:NCPDP:”, as for example in “urn:NCPDP:D.0:P1:610674:000000000000-0000-0000-0000-00000000”, then it is referencing an NCPDP Telecommunication Specification with four segments of text separated by colons; (1) the first segment after the prefix “urn:NCPDP:” being the NCPDP standard version (e.g. “D.0”), (2) the second segment being the transaction (e.g. “P1”), (3) the third being the BIN number (e.g., 610674), and (4) the fourth segment being the id of another REMS material document which is the particular implementation guide for the transaction.

21.2.8.8 Size of document attachment is less than 1 MB.

21.2.8.9 File name extension matches the media type“.pdf”.

21.2.8.10 Reference value must be the file name for a valid document attachment.

21.2.8.11 Same file name cannot occur under a different document id and the same document id cannot be used with different file name.

22 REMS Shared System Indexing

22.1 Header

22.1.1 Document type

```
<document>
   <code code="82353-4" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
     displayName="Indexing - Risk Evaluation &amp;amp; Mitigation Strategies"/>
```

Validation Procedures

22.1.1.1 Document code is as above

22.1.1.2 If a document with the same set id has been previously submitted, then it is of the same type.

22.1.2 Author information

REMS Indexing is maintained by FDA:

```
<author>
  <assignedEntity>
    <representedOrganization>
      <id root="1.3.6.1.4.1.519.1" extension="927645523"/>
      <name>Food and Drug Administration</name>
```

22.1.2.1 Author information for Indexing – REMS is as one of the above.

22.1.2.2 The DUNS Number for the author is 927645523.

22.1.2.3 There are no other author elements than id and name.

22.1.3 REMS Document Reference

The REMS Indexing refers to a number of REMS documents which all participate in the same shared system of REMS documents. The first reference is the leading REMS document, which would be considered authoritative, while the other REMS documents are considered secondary to the authoritative one.

```
<document>
  ...
  <author .../>

  <relatedDocument typeCode="SUBJ">
    <relatedDocument>
      <setId root="set id of the leading REMS document"/>
    </relatedDocument>
  </relatedDocument>

  <relatedDocument typeCode="SUBJ">
    <relatedDocument>
      <setId root="set id of a secondary REMS document"/>
    </relatedDocument>
  </relatedDocument>

  <relatedDocument typeCode="SUBJ">
    <relatedDocument>
      <setId root="set id of another secondary REMS document"/>
    </relatedDocument>
  </relatedDocument>

  <component .../>
</document>
```

Validation Procedures

22.1.3.1 There is one or more related document.

22.1.3.2 Type code attribute is SUBJ.

22.1.3.3 There is no document id

22.1.3.4 There is a set id

22.1.3.5 Set id is a GUID

22.1.3.6 Related document set id is the set id of a REMS document.

22.1.3.7 If a REMS indexing file for the related document set id has been previously submitted, then it is a prior version of this indexing document with the same set id.

22.1.3.8 If a document with the same set id has been previously submitted, then it is associated with the same related document set id.

22.2 Body

```
<document>          <!-- SPL header material here -->
  <component>
    <structuredBody><!-- SPL body material here -->
      <component>
        <section>   <!-- Product data element section -->
          <code code="48780-1" codeSystem="2.16.840.1.113883.6.1"
                displayName="SPL product data elements section"/>
          <subject>
            <manufacturedProduct>
              <!-- product data elements -->
            </manufacturedProduct>
          </subject>
        </section>
      </component>
                    <!-- Other content of labeling material -->
      <component>
        <!-- ... -->
```

22.2.1 Indexing Section

Validation Procedures:

22.2.1.1 If the document type is Indexing – REMS (82353-4) then the document contains one or more SPL Indexing Data Elements section as above.

22.2.1.2 Value of effective time is same as value of effective time in document information.

22.2.2 Indexing - REMS Data Element

```
<subject>
  <manufacturedProduct>
    <manufacturedProduct>
      <name>proprietary name <suffix>suffix to name</suffix></name>
```

Validation Procedures:

22.2.2.1 There is a name, i.e., proprietary name of the product as used in product labeling SPL.